



Tekla Structural Designer 2024

Design Codes Reference: Eurocodes

March 2024

©2024 Trimble Inc. and affiliates

Contents

1	Loading (Eurocode)	9
1.1	Nationally Determined Parameters (Eurocode)	9
1.2	Loadcases (Eurocode)	17
	Loadcase types (Eurocode).....	17
	Self weight (Eurocode).....	18
	Imposed and roof imposed loads (Eurocode).....	19
	Imposed load reduction (Eurocode).....	19
	Wind loads (Eurocode)	20
	Snow loads (Eurocode).....	21
	Loadcases set up by the snow wizard	21
	Undrifted loadcases.....	22
	Drifted loadcases.....	22
	Definition of psi factors for snow and snow drift loadcases.....	23
1.3	Wind wizard (EC1991 1-4).....	23
	Design Codes and References	24
	Scope (Eurocode EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard)	24
	Limitations (EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard).....	25
	Geometry.....	25
	Loaded areas.....	26
	Wind direction.....	26
	Overall loads.....	26
	Beneficial loads.....	26
	Singapore National Annex - Minimum horizontal loads.....	26
	Finland National Annex.....	27
	Norway National Annex.....	27
	Wind loading on wall panels.....	27
	Wind loading on roof panels.....	27
	Additional wind loads.....	28
	Using the EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard with manual data.....	28
	Data Source page.....	28
	Basic data page.....	30
	Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page.....	31
	Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction) page.....	31
	Orography (Worst Case) page.....	32
	Orography (Data for each Direction) page.....	33
	Tall Neighbouring Structure page.....	33
	Results page.....	34
	Using the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard with BREVe data.....	35
	Data Source (BREVe) page.....	35
	BREVe location page.....	36
	Basic Data (BREVe) page.....	39
	Roughness and Obstructions (BREVe) page.....	39
	Orography (BREVe) page.....	40
	Tall Neighbouring Structure page.....	41
	Results (BREVe) page.....	41

	EC1991 1-4 Wind Zones.....	42
	Basic Geometry.....	42
	Wall Zones.....	44
	Roof Zones.....	44
	Creating wind loadcases to EC1991 1-4.....	46
	Add loadcases.....	47
	Auto generate loadcases.....	48
	Add loadcases using size and dynamic factors (UK National Annex only).....	48
	Auto generate loadcases using size and dynamic factors (UK National Annex only).....	49
	Review wind loadcases.....	49
1.4	Wind wizard (CTE DB SE-AE)	49
	Limitations.....	50
	Data Source page.....	50
	Basic data page.....	50
	Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page.....	51
	Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction) page.....	52
	Results page.....	52
1.5	Snow wizard (Eurocode).....	53
1.6	Combinations (Eurocode)	59
	Manually defined combinations (Eurocode)	59
	Equivalent horizontal forces (EHF) (Eurocode)	60
	Minimum lateral loads (MLL) (Eurocode)	60
	Combination generator (Eurocode).....	62
	Open the Combination Generator	62
	Initial Parameters page.....	62
	Combinations page.....	63
	Service page.....	66
	Wind/EHF directions page.....	66
	EHF (global imperfections) page.....	67
	Minimum Lateral Loads page.....	67
	Combination classes (Eurocode)	68
1.7	References (Eurocode)	70
2	Steel design to EC3 and EC4.....	71
2.1	Basic principles (EC3)	71
	Definitions (EC3 Eurocode)	72
	Convention for member axes (EC3 Eurocode)	73
	Deflection checks (EC3 Eurocode)	73
2.2	Steel beam design to EC3.....	74
	Design method (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	75
	Steel beam limitations and assumptions (Beam: EC3 Eurocode)	75
	Ultimate Limit State - Strength (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	76
	Classification (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	76
	Shear capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	77
	Moment capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	79
	Axial capacity (Beam: EC3 Eurocode)	79
	Combined bending and axial capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	79
	Ultimate limit state - Buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	80
	Compression buckling (Beams: EC3)	81
	Lateral torsional buckling (Beams: EC3)	82
	Combined buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	83
	Design control (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	84

	Torsion (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	86
	Fire resistance check (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	87
	Web openings (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	88
2.3	Composite beam design to EC4.....	92
	Design method (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	92
	Overview (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	93
	Profiled metal decking (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	94
	Stud connector strength (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	95
	Application of NCCI PN002 to Partial Shear Connection (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	95
	Concrete haunch width (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	96
	Concrete slab (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	98
	Precast concrete planks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	99
	Construction Stage design (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	99
	Section classification (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	99
	Member strength checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	100
	Lateral torsional buckling checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	100
	Deflection checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	101
	Composite stage design (Composite beam: EC4 Eurocode)	101
	Equivalent steel section - Ultimate limit state (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	102
	Section classification (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	102
	Member strength checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	102
	Minimum area of transverse reinforcement (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	104
	Shear connectors (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	104
	Lateral torsional buckling checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	107
	Section properties - serviceability limit state (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	107
	Deflection checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	108
	Stress checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	108
	Natural frequency checks (SLS) (Beams: EC4 Eurocode)	109
	Cracking of concrete (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	109
	Web openings (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	109
2.4	Steel column design to EC3.....	114
	Design method (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115
	Simple columns (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115
	Ultimate limit state strength (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115
	Classification (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115
	Axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	116
	Shear capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	116
	Moment capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	117
	Combined bending and axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	118
	Ultimate limit state buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	118
	Compression buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	119
	Lateral torsional buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	121
	Combined buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	122
	Serviceability limit state (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	123
2.5	Column base plate design to EC3.....	123
	Practical applications.....	124
	Scope.....	124
	Theory and assumptions.....	126
	Analysis.....	128
	Sign Conventions.....	128
2.6	Steel brace design to EC3.....	129

2.7	Steel single, double angle and tee section design to EC3.....	130
	Design method.....	130
	Limitations.....	130
	Section axes.....	131
	Classification checks.....	132
	Axial tension check.....	132
	Axial compression check.....	132
	Shear check.....	133
	Moment check.....	133
	Combined bending and axial check.....	134
	Lateral torsional buckling check.....	135
	Compression buckling check.....	135
	Combined buckling check.....	136
	Deflection of single angles.....	137
2.8	References to EC3 and EC4.....	137
3	Concrete design to EC2.....	139
3.1	General parameters (EC2).....	139
3.2	Concrete beam design to EC2.....	141
	Limitations (concrete beam and slab: EC2).....	142
	Slender beams (concrete beam: EC2).....	142
	Cover to reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2).....	143
	Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete beam: EC2).....	144
	Side reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2).....	149
	Effective depth of section (concrete beam: EC2).....	149
	Design for bending for rectangular sections (concrete beam: EC2).....	150
	Design for bending for flanged sections (concrete beam: EC2).....	153
	Design shear resistance (concrete beam: EC2).....	155
	Minimum area of shear reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2).....	159
	Spacing of shear reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2).....	160
	Shear between flanges and web of flanged beams (concrete beam: EC2).....	162
	Additional tension reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2).....	164
	Design values of shear resistance and torsional resistance moment (concrete beam: EC2).....	165
	Additional reinforcement for torsion (concrete beam: EC2).....	168
	Deflection check (concrete beam and slab: EC2).....	170
3.3	Concrete column design to EC2.....	174
	Limitations (concrete column: EC2).....	174
	Cover to Reinforcement (concrete column: EC2).....	175
	Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete column: EC2).....	176
	Ultimate axial load limit (concrete column: EC2).....	178
	Effective length calculations (concrete column: EC2).....	179
	Column stack classification (concrete column: EC2).....	182
	Overview of second order effects (concrete column: EC2).....	184
	Design moment calculations (concrete column: EC2).....	187
	Design for combined axial and bending (concrete column: EC2).....	190
	Design parameters for shear (concrete column: EC2).....	190
3.4	Concrete wall design to EC2.....	194
	Limitations (Concrete wall: EC2).....	195
	Cover to Reinforcement (Concrete wall: EC2).....	195
	Design Parameters for Vertical Bars (Concrete wall: EC2).....	196
	Design Parameters for Horizontal Bars (Concrete wall: EC2).....	198
	Ultimate axial load limit (Concrete wall: EC2).....	200

	Effective length calculations (Concrete wall: EC2).....	201
	Wall panel classification (Concrete wall: EC2).....	203
	Overview of second order effects (concrete wall: EC2).....	206
	Design moment calculations (Concrete wall:EC2).....	208
	Design for combined axial and bending (Concrete wall:EC2).....	211
	Design parameters for shear (Concrete wall: EC2).....	212
3.5	Concrete slab design to EC2.....	216
	Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete slab: EC2).....	216
	Design for bending for rectangular sections (concrete slab: EC2).....	221
3.6	Pad and strip base design to EC2.....	223
	Checks performed (pad and strip base:EC2).....	224
	Foundation Bearing Capacity (pad and strip base:EC2).....	224
	Design for bending (pad and strip base:EC2).....	228
	Design for shear (pad and strip base:EC2).....	228
	Check for sliding (pad and strip base:EC2).....	230
	Check for uplift (pad and strip base:EC2).....	230
3.7	Pile cap design to EC2.....	231
	Pile axial capacity (pile cap:EC2).....	231
	Pile lateral capacity (pile cap:EC2).....	232
	Design for bending (pile cap:EC2).....	232
	Design for shear (pile cap:EC2).....	232
	Checks for limiting parameters (pile cap:EC2).....	233
3.8	Punching shear checks to EC2.....	234
	Limitations and assumptions.....	234
	Punching shear perimeters.....	235
	Loaded, control and outer perimeters.....	235
	Length of the loaded perimeter u_0	238
	Length of the basic control perimeter u_1	241
	Modification of control perimeters to take account of slab openings.....	241
	Magnification factor, beta.....	242
	Pad base punching shear checks.....	243
	Pile cap punching shear checks.....	244
3.9	References EC2.....	244
4	Vibration of floors to SCI P354	245
4.1	Introduction to floor vibration (P354).....	245
4.2	Scope of floor vibration (P354).....	246
4.3	Limitations and Assumptions of floor vibration to P354.....	247
4.4	Design philosophy of P354 floor vibration.....	247
	General.....	248
	Dynamic excitation.....	248
	Required performance.....	250
	Provided performance.....	250
4.5	Provided performance P354 floor vibration.....	251
	System frequency.....	251
	Modal mass.....	254
	Mode Shape Factor.....	256
	Resonance Build-up Factor.....	256
	Resonance Acceleration.....	257
	Response Factor.....	258
	Vibration Dose Values.....	258

4.6	Input requirements for P354 floor vibration.....	259
	General.....	259
	Data Derived from Tekla Structural Designer (P354).....	260
	User Input Data (P354).....	261
4.7	Vibration of floors to SCI P354 references	263

1 Loading (Eurocode)

This handbook provides a general overview of how loadcases and combinations are created in Tekla Structural Designer when the regional code is set to the base Eurocode, or Eurocode with a specific National Annex applied. The Eurocode Combination generator is also described.

The following topics are covered:

- [Nationally Determined Parameters \(Eurocode\) \(page 9\)](#)
- [Loadcases \(Eurocode\) \(page 17\)](#)
- [Wind wizard \(EC1991 1-4\) \(page 23\)](#)
- [Wind wizard \(CTE DB SE-AE\) \(page 49\)](#)
- [Snow wizard \(Eurocode\) \(page 52\)](#)
- [Combinations \(Eurocode\) \(page 59\)](#)

1.1 Nationally Determined Parameters (Eurocode)

The Eurocode has differing Nationally Determined Parameters (NDPs) for the Eurocode (Base) and for each of Eurocode (UK), Eurocode (Irish) etc. These are defined in the relevant country's National Annex.

Gamma (γ) factors, psi (Ψ) factors and seismic phi (ϕ) factors for each National Annex are listed below. The recommended Eurocode values from the Eurocode (Base) are also given.

Gamma (γ) factors

EQU combs

National Annex	$\gamma_{Gj,sup}$	$\gamma_{Gj,inf}$	γ_Q (fav)
Recommended Eurocode value	1.10	0.9	1.5
UK value	1.10	0.9	1.5

National Annex	$\gamma_{Gj,sup}$	$\gamma_{Gj,inf}$	γ_Q (fav)
Irish value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Singapore value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Malaysia value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Finland value	$1.10k_{FI}$	0.9	$1.5k_{FI}$
Norway value	1.2	0.9	1.5
Sweden value	$1.1\gamma_d$	0.9	$1.5\gamma_d$

STR combs

National Annex	$\gamma_{Gj,sup}$	$\gamma_{Gj,inf}$	γ_Q (fav)
Recommended Eurocode value	1.10	0.9	1.5
UK value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Irish value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Singapore value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Malaysia value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Finland value	$1.10k_{FI}$	0.9	$1.5k_{FI}$
Norway value	1.2	0.9	1.5
Sweden value	$1.1\gamma_d$	0.9	$1.5\gamma_d$

GEO combs

National Annex	$\gamma_{Gj,sup}$	$\gamma_{Gj,inf}$	γ_Q (fav)
Recommended Eurocode value	1.10	0.9	1.5
UK value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Irish value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Singapore value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Malaysia value	1.10	0.9	1.5
Finland value	$1.10k_{FI}$	0.9	$1.5k_{FI}$
Norway value	1.2	0.9	1.5
Sweden value	$1.1\gamma_d$	0.9	$1.5\gamma_d$

The k_{FI} factor used in the Finnish National Annex is set by specifying an appropriate Consequence Class in **Settings > Loading > General**.

- CC3 (high consequence for loss of human life or economic social or environmental consequences very great)
- CC2 (medium consequence for loss of human life or economic social or environmental consequences considerable)

- CC1 (Low consequence for loss of human life, economic, social or environmental consequences small or negligible)

The γ_d factor used in the Swedish National Annex is set by specifying an appropriate Reliability Class in **Settings > Loading > General**.

- RC3 (major risk of serious personal injury)
- RC2 (some risk of serious personal injury)
- RC1 (minor risk of serious personal injury)

Psi (Ψ) factors

- Ψ_0 - Factor for combination value of a variable action.
- Ψ_1 - Factor for frequent value of a variable action.
- Ψ_2 - Factor for quasi-permanent value of a variable action.

UK, Ireland

Action	Recommended Eurocode value			UK value			Irish value		
	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
Category A imposed domestic / residential	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category B imposed office	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category C imposed congregation	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6
Category D imposed	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6

	Recommended Eurocode value			UK value			Irish value		
Action	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
shopping									
Category E imposed storage	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8
Category H imposed roofs	0	0	0	0.7	0	0	0.6	0	0
Snow Loads < 1000 m	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0
Snow Loads > 1000 m ($2 \leq s_k < 3$ kN/m ²)	0.7	0.5	0.2	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0
Ice Loads	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Wind Loads	0.6	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0	0.6	0.2	0
Thermal Loads	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0

Singapore Malaysia

	Recommended Eurocode value			Singapore value			Malaysia value		
Action	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
Category A imposed domestic / residential	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category B imposed office	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category C imposed congregation	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6
Category D imposed shopping	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6
Category E imposed storage	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8
Category H imposed roofs	0	0	0	0.7	0	0	0.7	0	0
Snow Loads < 1000 m	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0

	Recommended Eurocode value			Singapore value			Malaysia value		
Action	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
Snow Loads > 1000 m ($2 \leq s_k < 3$ kN/m ²)	0.7	0.5	0.2	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0
Ice Loads	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Wind Loads	0.6	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0	0.5	0.2	0
Thermal Loads	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0

Nordic Countries

	Finnish value			Norwegian value			Swedish value		
Action	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
Category A imposed domestic / residential	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category B imposed office	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3	0.7	0.5	0.3
Category C imposed congr	0.7	0.7	0.3	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6

Action	Finnish value			Norwegian value			Swedish value		
	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
Category D imposed shopping	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6	0.7	0.7	0.6
Category E imposed storage	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8	1.0	0.9	0.8
Category H imposed roofs	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Snow Loads (< 1000 m) ($1 \leq s_k < 2$ kN/m ²)	0.7	0.4	0.2	0.7	0.5	0.2	0.6	0.3	0.1
Snow Loads > 1000 m ($2 \leq s_k < 3$ kN/m ²)	0.7	0.5	0.2	0	0	0	0.7	0.4	0.2
Snow Loads $\geq$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0.8	0.6	0.2

Action	Finnish value			Norwegian value			Swedish value		
	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2	Ψ_0	Ψ_1	Ψ_2
3kN/m ²									
Ice Loads	0.7	0.3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Wind Loads	0.6	0.2	0	0.6	0.2	0	0.3	0.2	0
Thermal Loads	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0	0.6	0.5	0

Seismic phi (φ) factors

An additional phi (φ) factor for Seismic design - from EN 1998-1 Table 4.2 is required for creation of the Seismic Inertia Combination. This is defined with each new imposed or roof imposed loadcase - alongside the psi (Ψ) factors for each of the load types.

UK, Singapore

Category	Default for	Storey	Factor φ from EN 1998-1 Table 4.2		
			EC	UK	Singapore
A - C	Roof Imposed	Roofs	1.0	1.0	1.0
A - C	Imposed = A, B, C	Stories with correlated occupancies	0.8	0.8	0.8
A - C		Stories independently occupied	0.5	0.5	0.5
D - F	Imposed = D, E	D-F and Archives	1.0	1.0	1.0

Nordic countries

Category	Default for	Storey	Factor φ from EN 1998-1 Table 4.2		
			EC	Norwegian	Finnish, Swedish*
A - C	Roof Imposed	Roofs	1.0	1.0	1.0
A - C	Imposed = A, B, C	Stories with correlated	0.8	1.0	0.8

Cate-gory	Default for	Storey	Factor φ from EN 1998-1 Table 4.2		
		occupancies			
A - C		Stories independently occupied	0.5	1.0	0.5
D - F	Imposed = D, E	D-F and Archives	1.0	1.0	1.0

* There are no Finnish or Swedish National Annexes to EN 1998-1 so the recommended Eurocode values are applied.

1.2 Loadcases (Eurocode)

- [Loadcase types \(Eurocode\) \(page 17\)](#)
- [Self weight \(Eurocode\) \(page 18\)](#)
- [Imposed and roof imposed loads \(Eurocode \) \(page 19\)](#)
- [Imposed load reduction \(Eurocode\) \(page 19\)](#)
- [Wind loads \(Eurocode\) \(page 20\)](#)
- [Snow loads \(Eurocode\) \(page 21\)](#)

Loadcase types (Eurocode)

The following loadcase types can be created:

Loadcase type	Calculated automatically	Include in the Combination Generator	Imposed load reductions	Pattern load
self weight (beams, columns and walls)	yes/no	yes/no	N/A	N/A
slab wet	yes/no	N/A	N/A	N/A
slab dry	yes/no	yes/no	N/A	N/A
dead	N/A	yes/no	N/A	N/A
imposed	N/A	yes/no	yes/no	yes/no
roof imposed	N/A	yes/no	N/A	N/A

Loadcase type	Calculated automatically	Include in the Combination Generator	Imposed load reductions	Pattern load
wind	N/A	yes/no	N/A	N/A
snow	N/A	yes/no	N/A	N/A
snow drift	N/A	yes/no	N/A	N/A
temperature	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
settlement	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
seismic	N/A	yes	N/A	N/A

As shown above, self weight loads can all be determined automatically. However, other gravity loadcases have to be applied manually as you build the structure.

Self weight (Eurocode)

Self weight - excluding slabs loadcase

Tekla Structural Designer automatically calculates the self weight of the structural beams/columns for you. The **Self weight - excluding slabs** loadcase is pre-defined for this purpose. Its loadcase type is fixed as "Selfweight". It cannot be edited and by default it is added to each new load combination.

Self weight of concrete slabs

Tekla Structural Designer expects the wet and dry weight of concrete slab to be defined in separate loadcases. This is required to ensure that members are designed for the correct loads at construction stage and post construction stage.

The **Slab self weight** loadcase is pre-defined for the dry weight of concrete post construction stage, its loadcase type is fixed as "Slab Dry".

There is no pre-defined loadcase for the wet weight of concrete slab at construction stage, but if you require it for the design of any composite beams in the model the loadcase type should be set to "Slab Wet".

Tekla Structural Designer can automatically calculate the above weights for you taking into account the slab thickness, the shape of the deck profile and wet/dry concrete densities. It does not explicitly take account of the weight of any reinforcement but will include the weight of decking. Simply click the **Calc Automatically** check box when you create each loadcase. When calculated in this way you can't add extra loads of your own into the loadcase.

If you normally make an allowance for ponding in your slab weight calculations, Tekla Structural Designer can also do this for you. After selecting the composite slabs, you are able to review the slab item properties - you will

find two ways to add an allowance for ponding (under the slab parameters heading). These are:

- as a value, by specifying the average increased thickness of slab
- or, as a percentage of total volume.

Using either of these methods the additional load is added as a uniform load over the whole area of slab.

Imposed and roof imposed loads (Eurocode)

Definition of psi factors for imposed loadcases

In the Loadcase dialog when an imposed loadcase is selected, you are able to select the Category of imposed load as follows - default Category B - office:

- Category A - domestic/residential
- Category B - office
- Category C - congregation
- Category D - shopping
- Category E - storage

The default values of Ψ_0 , Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 vary depending on the category selected and also with the National Annex being worked to. The values can be edited if required. See "psi factors"

Definition of psi factors for roof imposed loadcases

Roof imposed loads are not categorised so the default values of Ψ_0 , Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 only vary depending on the National Annex being worked to. Again, the values can be edited if required.

Imposed load reduction (Eurocode)

Reductions can be applied to imposed loads to take account of the unlikelihood of the whole building being loaded with its full design imposed load. Reductions can not however be applied to roof imposed loads.

NOTE If the imposed load is considered as an accompanying action (i.e. a Ψ factor is applied to the imposed loadcase in a combination) then as stated in the Base Eurocode cl 3.3.2, the imposed load reduction should not be applied at the same time.

Imposed loads are only automatically reduced on:

- Columns of any material

- Concrete walls, mid-pier or meshed

The method used for determining the reductions is dependant on the National Annex:

- In the Base Eurocode a formula is given in cl 6.3.1.2(11), this is also used if the Irish, Finish, Norwegian, Swedish or Singaporean National Annex is selected.
- In the UK, and Malaysia the NA permits an alternative method of reduction using NA 2.6.

Although the code allows for imposed load reductions to be applied to floors, Tekla Structural Designer does not implement this automatically. For steel beams, concrete beams, slabs and mats it is however possible to define the level of imposed load reduction manually via the beam/slab item properties.

This is particularly relevant for the design of transfer beams/slabs:

- The imposed load reduction for beams, slabs and mats is intended to work with loads applied from columns acting on the beam or slab when the slab is acting in transfer or for a mat foundation supporting a column. (The theory being that if you want to design the columns for the reduced axial load, you should also design the supporting member for the reduced axial load applied by the column.)
- The engineer would need to work out the reduction of the axial load in the column and apply this as a the reduction percentage, i.e. if the raw axial load in the column is 100kN and the reduced load is 60kN, the reduction is 40%. You would than apply the 40% reduction to the transfer beam/slab or mat as well.
- The reduction is not applied to loads for analysis - it is a post-analysis process which does not affect the analysis results. It does not get applied solely to the imposed load applied directly to the beam or slab panel, but instead is applied to the design moment used in the beam/slab or mat design process.

Wind loads (Eurocode)

The [Wind wizard \(EC1991 1-4\) \(page 23\)](#) can be run to create a series of static forces that are combined with other actions due to dead and imposed loads in accordance with BS EN 1990.

The following assumptions/limitations exist:

- The shape of the building meets the limitations allowed for in the code.
- It must be a rigid structure.
- The structure must be either enclosed or partially enclosed.
- Parapets and roof overhangs are not explicitly dealt with.

Simple wind loading

If use of the wind wizard is not appropriate for your structure then wind loads can be applied via element or structure loads instead.

Definition of psi factors for wind loadcases

In the Loadcase dialog when a wind loadcase is selected, the default values of Ψ_0 , Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 are displayed. These vary depending on the National Annex being worked to. The values can be edited if required. See "psi factors".

Snow loads (Eurocode)

Loadcases set up by the snow wizard

In the [Snow wizard \(Eurocode\) \(page 52\)](#) you choose the snow loadcases to be set up from the following list:

- Snow Load - Case A - 1) Undrifted
- Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted *
- Snow Load - Case B1 - 1) Undrifted Snow Load - Case B1 - 2) Drifted *
- Snow Load - Case B1 - 3) Undrifted (Acc)
- Snow Load - Case B1 - 4) Drifted (Acc) *
- Snow Load - Case B2 - 1) Undrifted
- Snow Load - Case B2 - 2) Drifted *
- If any drifts from Annex B are selected
 - Snow Load - Case B2 - 3) Drifted (Annex B) (Acc) *
- Snow Load - Case B3 - 1) Undrifted
- Snow Load - Case B3 - 2) Drifted *
- Snow Load - Case B3 - 3) Undrifted (Acc)
- If any drifts from Annex B are selected
 - Snow Load - Case B3 - 4) Drifted (Annex B) (Acc) *

NOTE For cases marked * - the number of cases actually set up will depend on the number of wind directions that are asked for.

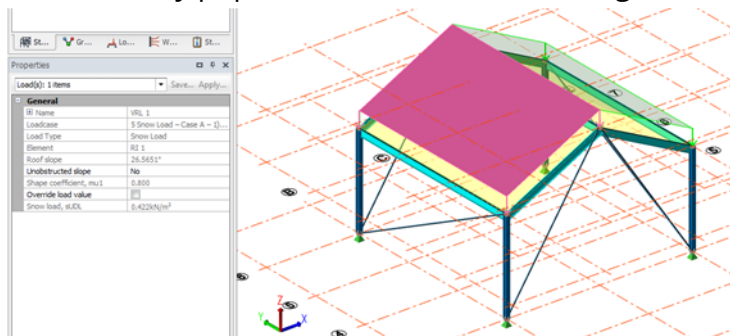
NOTE The Eurocode / National Annex recommends which loadcases to generate.

NOTE All loads and lengths of loads are assumed to act on a horizontal projection of the roof surface.

Once set up these loadcases are standard loadcases so you can include them in combinations in the normal manner.

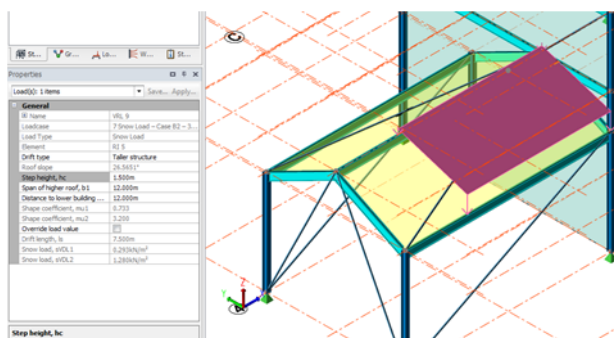
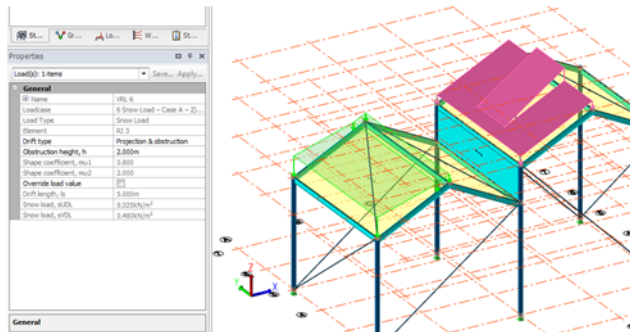
Undrifted loadcases

Any undrifted loadcases that have been set up in the snow wizard are automatically populated with uniform loading on completion of the wizard



Drifted loadcases

All drifted loadcases that have been set up in the snow wizard would need to be have their snow loads manually applied on completion of the wizard.



Definition of psi factors for snow and snow drift loadcases

In the Loadcase dialog when a snow, snow drift, or ice loadcase is selected, the default values of Ψ_0 , Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 are displayed. These vary depending on the National Annex being worked to. The values can be edited if required. See “psi factors”

NOTE Snow drift loads are considered to be accidental loadcases and are combined in the Accidental combinations.

1.3 Wind wizard (EC1991 1-4)

To access this configuration of the wind wizard the Wind Loading Code has to be set to BS EN 1991-1-4.

Once the wall and roof panels are in place, you use the wind wizard to define sufficient site information to calculate the peak wind velocity and velocity pressures for the required wind directions and heights around the building, (that is the Reference Heights (z_e and z_i) for each wall panel or roof panel).

The wind velocity calculations are automated, with the data source for the calculations being either:

- Input directly for the worst case,
- Input directly for each direction,
- taken directly from the BREVe database ([page 70](#)) which is based upon the Ordnance Survey data of Great Britain (only available for users working to the UK or Ireland National Annex).

Unless explicitly stated all calculations in the wind wizard are in accordance with the relevant sections of EC EN1991 1-4 ([page 70](#)) and the chosen National Annex. It is essential that you have a copy of the code and National Annex with you while assessing wind on any structure.

We would recommend having the following books to hand when using the software:

- Designers' Guide to EN 1991-1-4. Euro Code 1 : Actions on Structures, General Actions Part 1-4 : Wind actions. ([page 70](#))
- Wind Loading - a practical guide to BS 6399-2 Wind Loads on buildings. ([page 70](#))

In addition, you may find the following book useful:

- Background information to the National Annex to BS EN 1991-1-4 and additional guidance. PD 6688 - 1-4:2009. ([page 70](#))

Topics in this section

[Scope \(Eurocode EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard\) \(page 24\)](#)

[Limitations \(EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard\) \(page 25\)](#)

[Using the EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard with manual data \(page 28\)](#)

[Using the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard with BREVe data \(page 35\)](#)

[EC1991 1-4 Wind Zones \(page 42\)](#)

[Creating wind loadcases to EC1991 1-4 \(page 46\)](#)

Design Codes and References

Unless explicitly stated all calculations in the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard are in accordance with the relevant sections of EC EN1991 1-4 ([page 70](#)) and the chosen National Annex. It is essential that you have a copy of the code and National Annex with you while assessing wind on any structure.

We would recommend having the following books to hand when using the software:

- Designers' Guide to EN 1991-1-4. Euro Code 1 : Actions on Structures, General Actions Part 1-4 : Wind actions. ([page 70](#))
- Wind Loading - a practical guide to BS 6399-2 Wind Loads on buildings. ([page 70](#))

In addition, you may find the following book useful:

- Background information to the National Annex to BS EN 1991-1-4 and additional guidance. PD 6688 - 1-4:2009. ([page 70](#))

Scope (Eurocode EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard)

There is no guidance in the standard for anything other than a cuboid building. In order to develop a tool for engineers, we have extended this capability to address non-rectilinear buildings. It is therefore the user's responsibility to ensure that the wind loading generated by the software meets the needs of any building with a shape that is beyond the scope of BS EN 1991-1-4:2005.

The scope of EN1991 1-4 Wind wizard encompasses:

- Enveloping the building with wall panels and roof panels is undertaken in Tekla Structural Designer in the normal manner. There is only limited validation of the envelope defined (for example connected wall panels must have consistent normal directions). The onus is on you to model the building shape as completely and as accurately as you determine necessary.
- Basic Wind Velocity and Peak Velocity Pressure is determined.
- Having defined wall panels and roof panels (defaults are standard wall, flat or monopitch roof depending on the slope), you are able to specify the type in more detail e.g. multi-bay, monopitch / duopitch etc.).

- The main wind parameters, are calculated for you but conservatively, (for example Crosswind Breadth, b , is determined for the enclosing rectangle of the whole building). Wherever possible other parameters are determined conservatively, but you are able to override the values should you need to.
- Given the above, zoning is semi-automatic, (not attempted for roofs with more than 4 sides which are defaulted to single conservative coefficient), with full graphical feedback.
- The software follows the UK NA (Ref. 3) recommendation that BS6399 roof zones and coefficients are used, including Mansard, Multipitch and Multibay roofs.
- Load decomposition is fully automatic where valid, (wall panels and roof panels need to be fully supported in the direction of span).

Limitations (EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard)

This page discusses the limitations to the wind wizard.

Throughout the development of the Wind wizard extensive reference has been made to the References and we consider it advisable that you are fully familiar with these before using the software.

In addition, because wind loading is complex and its application to general structures even more so, it is essential that you read and fully appreciate the following limitations in the software:

Geometry

WARNING You should seek specialist advice for building shapes that are not covered by the Standard - BS EN 1991-1-4:2005.

- EC1 1-4 does not treat downwind re-entrant corners as special cases - see BS6399 Clause 2.4.3.1 c). So, they are ignored in the software and no warnings are given.
- EC1 1-4 does not handle stepped profiles, or inset storeys - see BS6399 clauses 2.4.4.2 and 2.5.1.7. Hence the software does not handle them automatically, but does generate warnings if such cases are detected - so you can manually edit the zones according to your engineering judgement.
- Open sided buildings are beyond scope.
- Free standing walls and sign boards are not considered.
- Canopies are not considered.
- Exposed members are not considered, for example lattices, trusses.....
- Barrel-vault roofs and domes are not considered

- Dominant Faces are not explicitly handled - Clause 7.2.9 (5). However, you can use Table 17 to calculate the necessary Cpi value or values and manually apply to a loadcase or individual zone loads.

Loaded areas

The difference between the loaded area of wall panels and roof panels defined at the centre-line rather than the sheeting dimension is ignored.

Wind direction

- All outward faces within 60 degs of being perpendicular to wind direction - loads applied as windward normal to face. All inside faces within 60 degs to wind direction - loads applied as leeward normal to face. All other faces considered as side.
- Orthogonal wind directions at the definition of the user.

Overall loads

- Lack of correlation of pressures between the windward and leeward sides. For Overall loadcases, the software automatically reduces the windward and leeward wall pressures only. EC1 1-4 and the UK NA both suggest that the reduction "may" be applied to roofs as well.
- Division by Parts rule for "slender" buildings -Clause 7.2.2 and Figure 7.4 - not applied.
- Friction Forces - Clause 5.3 (3), equation 5.7 and Clause 7.5.

During the "Update Zones" process, checks are performed to see if the effects can be disregarded, (Clause 5.3 (4)), and a 'Friction needed' warning is generated if not. When they cannot be disregarded you will need to manually model the friction forces as lateral loads in a separate loadcase and include them in your combinations.

Beneficial loads

- Asymmetric and Counteracting Pressures and Forces - Clause 7.1.2 and NA.2.23. Beneficial loads are not automatically removed - instead you are able to flag individual loads to be reduced to zero.

Singapore National Annex - Minimum horizontal loads

- The Foreword to the Singapore National Annex to EN 1991-1-4 Wind Actions has a minimum horizontal load requirement (1.5% characteristic dead weight). Therefore if this National Annex has been applied, it is the users responsibility to check that this requirement has been met (by

ensuring that the horizontal component of the factored wind load is greater).

Finland National Annex

- We do not consider thermal inversions for buildings > 100m tall

Norway National Annex

- We do not consider the transition zones between changes in terrain category.

Wind loading on wall panels

Automatic zoning applies to all wall panels subject to the limitations described below:

- Vertical Walls on rectangular buildings -Clause 7.2.2 - the assumption for wall wind forces is that the building is rectangular or close to being rectangular.
- Wall panels that are more than 15° from the vertical are outside the scope.
- Internal Wells are not covered by EC1 1-4 and in any case are not automatically identified but you can manually edit the zones to apply the roof coefficient or otherwise as you see fit - see BS6399 Clause 2.4.3.2a.
- EC1 1-4 does not specify how to treat recesses in side walls - see BS6399 clauses 2.4.3.2 b) and 2.4.3.3 and 3.3.1.5. So, they are ignored but warnings are given.

Wind loading on roof panels

- Automatic zoning only applies to all triangular roof panels and quadrilateral roof panels that are not concave, i.e. all of the internal angles < 180°
- Special care should be taken for winds blowing on duopitch with slopes that differ by more than 5°. If the wind is blowing on the steeper slope (that is that the less steep slope is downwind of ridge), the downwind slope should be set to be a flat roof with mansard at eaves for this wind direction.
- Mansard and Multipitch Roofs are not detected automatically, although certain special cases can be handled if you set the appropriate type manually - see EC1991 1-4 Wind Zones.
- BS 6399 Table 8 curved and mansard eaves - zones start from edge of horizontal roof.

- Roof Overhangs are not explicitly handled. It is suggested that you should define two separate roof panels - one forming the overhang and the other covering the inside of the building. For a small overhang, you can then manually define Cpi values to be the same as Cpe for the adjacent wall panel, (Clause 7.2.1 (3)). Reference 6, p45, implies that larger overhangs can be manually handled by using BS6399, Clauses 2.5.9.3 and 2.6.3, i.e. standard external coefficients for the top surface and Table 18 for the internal coefficients.

NOTE The only slight issue here is that there are two sets of edge zones which will occupy a slightly larger area than strictly necessary.

Additional wind loads

There may be situations when you perceive a need to manually define loads that cannot be determined automatically. You can do this by defining additional wind loadcases to contain these loads and then include these with the relevant system generated loads in design combinations in the normal way.

Using the EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard with manual data

This topic runs through each page of the wizard when the data source has been set to either 'Worst Case Data', or 'Data for Each Direction'.

TIP Additional options are provided for using BREVe data if working to the UK or Ireland National Annex. For further details see: [Using the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard with BREVe data \(page 35\)](#).

Data Source page

Property	Description
Data Source	Depending on the National Annex being worked to, there are up to four wind data sources available: • BREVe - UK National Grid Ref (only if working to the UK or Ireland National Annex) • BREVe - Irish Grid Ref (only if working to the UK or Ireland National Annex) • Worst Case Data

Property	Description
	Data for Each Direction - choosing this option allows you to specify data for multiple wind directions. For further details of the BREVe options, see: Using the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard with BREVe data (page 35). The remainder of the sections in this topic assume you have chosen to enter the site data manually (either 'Worst Case Data', or 'Data for Each Direction').
Consider Orography	If you select this checkbox, then the orographic data, (manually entered), is used to determine the Orography Factor c_o as clause A.3. When calculating c_{alt}, the altitude of the upwind base of the orographic feature is used for each wind direction considered. Otherwise the orographic data is ignored, c_o is 1.0 for all heights and c_{alt} is the same for all directions, using the Site Altitude.
Consider Tall Neighbouring Structures	If the conditions in clause A.4 are met, then the wind loads need to be based on height z_n, see equation (A.14). With this checkbox selected, you are able to enter sufficient data to check if this applies. If applicable, then z_n will be used as the reference height for all wall panels and roof panels in the model. NOTE If working to the Sweden NA, Tall Neighbouring Structures are not considered.
Consider Obstructions	With this checkbox selected, the obstruction data, (either defaulted by BREVe depending on the roughness category for the site or entered manually), is used to determine the Displacement Height, h_{dis} as (A15) in clause A.5. Otherwise the obstructions are ignored and h_{dis} is taken as zero. NOTE If working to the Sweden NA, Obstructions are not considered.
Apply Open Structure Wind Load	With this checkbox selected, additional wind forces are applied to those members, ancillaries and equipment that have the Apply Open Structure Wind Load property selected in their properties. NOTE This option is only displayed if at least one entity has been selected to have open structure wind load applied. For more information, see:

Clicking Next takes you to the **Basic data** page below.

Basic data page

This page is used you to define the site details.

Property	Description
Air density	You need to enter air density at the site.
Ground level	If for some reason, the level 0.0m in the Tekla Structural Designer model does not correspond to the ground level, for example a site datum may have been used rather than a building datum, then this field allows you to set the appropriate value so that the reference heights can be calculated correctly.
Fundamental Basic Wind Velocity	Reference should be made to the National Annex being worked to when determining an appropriate basic wind speed. See Clause 4.2 and NA.2.4
Season Factor, C_{season}	Valid range 0.01 to 10.0 - default 1.0.
Probability Factor, C_{prob}	Valid range 0.01 to 10.0 - default 1.0.
Default Height for Internal Pressure (z_i)	Clause 7.2.9 (7) implies that all internal pressures should be calculated using a single reference height, (z_i), defaulting to the height of the structure. Leaving Use Building Height checked ensures that the value is automatically updated if the geometry of wall panels or roof panels changes.
Peak Factor, k_p (Sweden NA only)	The Peak Factor was introduced by the Swedish EC NA (EK11) update. Using the default value (3.0) is the equivalent of the old calculation method prior to the update.
Region (Norway NA only)	A Region is needed (Area 1, Area 2 or Area 3) representing three different height zones in the country.
Site Altitude (Norway NA only)	You need to enter the basic altitude that you want to use for the site directly. This is the altitude of your model's base.

Depending on whether you chose worst case data, or data for each direction on the **Data Source** page, clicking **Next** either takes you to the **Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case)** page or the **Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction)** page.

Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page

If you select the Worst Case Data Source, then the next page of the wizard allows you to enter the data for ground roughness and obstructions yourself.

Property	Description
Terrain Category	Reference should be made to the National Annex being worked to when determining an appropriate Terrain Category. Depending on the terrain category selected and National Annex being worked to, you may also be required to enter some of the following data: • Average height of upwind buildings, • Upwind spacing of surrounding buildings, • Upwind distance from sea to site, • Upwind distance from edge of town to site.

Depending on your selections on the Data Source page, clicking **Next** either takes you to the **Orography (Worst Case)** page, the **Tall Neighbouring Structure** page, or the **Results** page.

Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction) page

If you select the **Other - Data for each Direction Data Source**, then the next page of the wizard allows you to enter the data for ground roughness and obstructions yourself. However, most of the data is then dependent on the wind direction, so you must also make your choice of wind directions on this page.

Property	Description
Direction	Initially there are 4 orthogonal wind directions relative to the Tekla Structural Designer axes, (not geographical North), but you are able to update these using the Dir. buttons and / or changing the direction value as required. (Note: Minimum 1° difference between directions). At least one direction must be defined. Each row of the grid operates in a similar manner to the relevant fields of the Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page.

Depending on your selections on the Data Source page, clicking Next either takes you to **Orography (Data for each Direction)** page, the **Tall Neighbouring Structure** page, or the **Results** page.

Orography (Worst Case) page

If **Consider Orography** was selected, then the next page of the wizard for the Worst Case Data Source allows you to enter the data for orography.

Property	Description
Orographic Feature	Options are: • None - no feature, i.e. $c_o = 1.0$. • 2D Escarp - Cliffs and Escarpments, • 3D Hill - Hills and Ridges. (See Clause A.3)
Altitude of Upwind Base of Feature, A	This value is used to calculate C_{alt} instead of the Site Altitude because the Orography is significant. NOTE C_{alt} will be calculated at z_e for each wall and roof panel, not z_s .
Effective Height, H	Effective crest height of the feature. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Length of Upwind Slope, L_u	Actual length of the upwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Length of Downwind Slope, L_d	Actual length of the downwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Horizontal Distance to Crest, x	Distance upwind or downwind from the crest to the building site. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Orography factor, $c_o(z)$ and Turbulence factor, k_t (Norway NA only)	When working to the Norway NA you are not required to enter the above factors; instead you enter the orography factor and turbulence factor directly for the defined 3D or 2D orographic feature.

If on the Data Source page you chose to consider tall neighbouring structures, clicking **Next** takes you to the **Tall Neighbouring Structure** page , otherwise it takes you to the **Results** page.

Orography (Data for each Direction) page

Property	Description
Direction	The wind directions defined on the previous page are maintained and you are not able to update them.
Orographic Feature	Options available are: • None - no feature, i.e. $c_o = 1.0$. • 2D Escarp - Cliffs and Escarpments, • 3D Hill - Hills and Ridges. (See Clause A.3)
Base Altitude, A	This value is used to calculate C_{alt} instead of the Site Altitude because the Orography is significant. NOTE C_{alt} will be calculated at z_e for each wall and roof panel, not z_s .
Effective Crest Height, H	Effective crest height of the feature. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Upwind Slope, L_u	Actual length of the upwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Downwind Slope, L_d	Actual length of the downwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Horizontal Distance to Crest, x	Distance upwind or downwind from the crest to the building site. (Figures A.2 & A.3)

If on the Data Source page you chose to consider tall neighbouring structures, clicking **Next** takes you to the **Tall Neighbouring Structure** page , otherwise it takes you to the **Results** page.

Tall Neighbouring Structure page

For all methods, if **Consider Tall Neighbouring Structure** was checked, the penultimate page allows you to determine if tall neighbouring structures affect the design of this structure. (Clause A.4)

Otherwise, the wizard will proceed directly to the Results page and the actual heights of wall and roof panels are used throughout.

The parameters, Height of Tall Neighbour, h_{high} , Largest Horizontal Dimension of Tall Neighbour, d_{large} and Distance to Tall Neighbour, x are all as described on Figure A.4 of the code.

Property	Description
Average Height of Neighbours, h_{ave}	The default is calculated from the BREVe data or the values entered for the Roughness & Obstructions. If Override calculated dimension is cleared, then the value will be updated whenever the wizard is run, otherwise the user-value is used. (Figure A.4)
Height of this structure, h_{low}	The field is for information only - difference between top of highest wall / roof panel and ground level in the model. (Figure A.4)

Click Next to go to the **Results** page.

Results page

The final page of the wizard is a summary of the results - peak velocity pressure ranges.

Initially there are 4 orthogonal wind directions relative to the Tekla Structural Designer axes, (not geographical North), but except for the **Other - Data for Each Direction method**, you are able to update this using the **Dir.** buttons and / or changing the direction value as required. (Note : Minimum 1° difference between directions). At least one direction must be defined.

You are able to use the **<<Details>>** button to obtain additional information, including the values of intermediate factors used in the calculations.

Property	Description
Other - Worst Case Data	The calculation of q_p is very similar to the BREVe Method, (see above), except that the worst case data has been entered by you, and this page allows you to enter your own values for C_{dir}. As there is no data for each 30° sector, the Vortex view only shows the Peak Velocity Pressures calculated for each reference height for each direction.
Other - Data for each Direction	The calculation of q_p is very similar to the BREVe Method, (see above), except that the data has been entered by you for each direction only so a direct calculation can be performed instead of taking the worst case over a range of sectors. Also this page allows you to enter your own values for C_{dir}. As there is no data for each 30° sector, the Vortex view only shows the Peak Velocity Pressures calculated for each reference height for each direction.

When you click **Finish**, the wizard generates the wind zones for the entire building for each of the specified wind directions.

NOTE Before moving on you should take a moment to inspect the Wind Model status on the Project Workspace> Status tab, in order to check that no [Limitations \(page 25\)](#) have been encountered.

Using the EC1991 1-4 Wind Wizard with BREVe data

This topic runs through each page of the wizard if working to the UK or Ireland National Annex when using the BREVe data source.

Data Source (BREVe) page

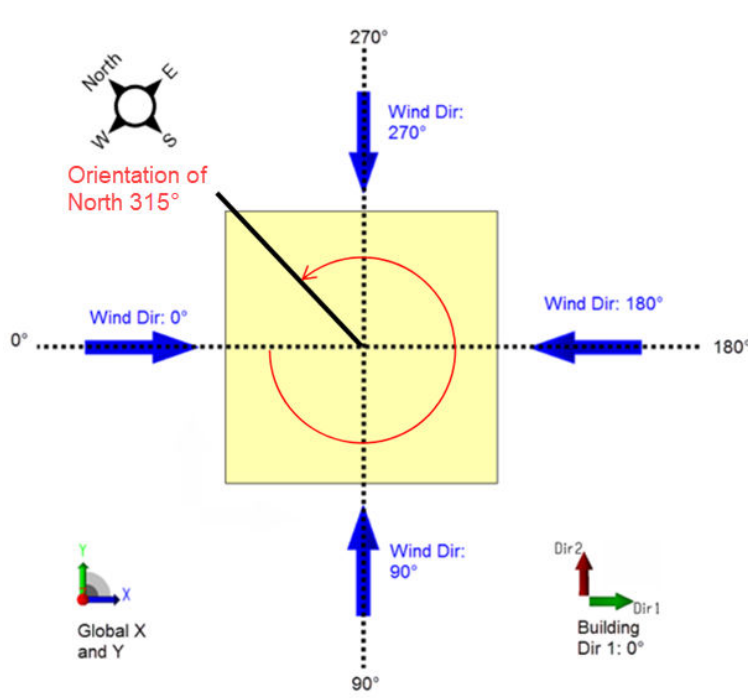
Property	Description
Data Source	When working to either the UK or Ireland National Annex the following wind data sources are available: • BREVe - UK National Grid Ref. • BREVe - Irish Grid Ref • Other - when this option is selected, different pages are presented in the wizard. For further details see: Using the EC1991-1-4 Wind wizard with manual data (page 28). The remainder of this section assumes one of the above BREVe options has been selected.
Consider Orography	If you select this checkbox, then the orographic data, (either recovered by BREVe for the site or manually entered), is used to determine the Orography Factor c_o as clause A.3. When calculating c_{alt}, the altitude of the upwind base of the orographic feature is used for each wind direction considered. Otherwise the orographic data is ignored, c_o is 1.0 for all heights and c_{alt} is the same for all directions, using the Site Altitude.
Consider Tall Neighbouring Structures	If the conditions in clause A.4 are met, then the wind loads need to be based on height z_n, see equation (A.14). With this checkbox selected, you are able to enter sufficient data to check if this applies. If applicable, then z_n will be used as the reference height for all wall panels and roof panels in the model.
Consider Obstructions	With this checkbox selected, the obstruction data, (either defaulted by BREVe depending on the roughness category for the site or entered manually), is used to determine the Displacement Height, h_{dis} as (A15) in clause A.5. Otherwise the obstructions are ignored and h_{dis} is taken as zero.

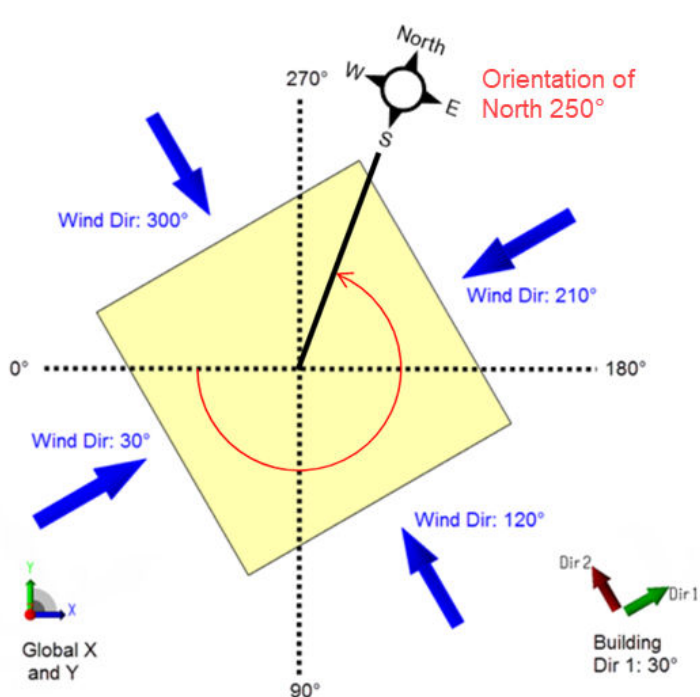
Property	Description
Apply Open Structure Wind Load	With this checkbox selected, additional wind forces are applied to those members, ancillaries and equipment that have the Apply Open Structure Wind Load property selected in their properties. NOTE This option is only displayed if at least one entity has been selected to have open structure wind load applied. For more information, see:

Assuming you have chosen to use BREVe Grid Ref data, clicking **Next** takes you to the **BREVe location** page.

BREVe location page

Property	Description
Grid Ref.	This shows the grid reference of the site which you have picked through BREVe, irrespective of the method you use to define the site location.
Orientation of building known	If you know the orientation of the building with respect to North, then you can define this information by checking this box. You can then define a value which relates the building direction axes of your Tekla Structural Designer model to geographic north. NOTE In the situation where the building orientation is not known, the peak wind velocity and peak velocity pressures are determined for all compass points around the building (full 360deg). The maximum velocity and pressure from all these directions are then applied to each required direction round the building. In doing so the value of the direction factor, c_{dir} used is that for a particular compass direction (as are the orography and roughness/obstructions factors). When the location of a building is known but its orientation is not, the above factors are all known for each compass direction - the fact that the building orientation is not known relative to the compass then means it is sensible to look for the maximum around the full compass and apply the maximum conservatively to all building directions.

Property	Description
Orientation of North	The orientation of North is defined using the same convention as is applied to the orientation of the Building Direction Arrows. This can best be understood by reference to a couple of examples: In the first example the building axes are aligned in the default directions (Dir 1 = 0° = Global X), and the orientation of North has been set to 315°. The resulting relation between the building axes and North is as shown below:  In the second example the building direction has been input with Dir 1 = 30° and the orientation of North has been set to 250°. In this case the building axes are related to North as shown below:

Property	Description
	 For a more detailed example and explanation, see this support article.
Using BREVe, there are 2 methods available for you to define the site location:	
Site By Ref...	You can define the grid reference of the site. You define this either as a national grid reference, or by specifying the Easting and Northing information for the site. There are several Internet based tools available which allow you to determine the Ordnance Survey grid reference from a postcode or given location, for example www.streetmap.co.uk or www.multimap.co.uk
Site By Map...	You can pick the site from a Land / Town Map, • You can pick the site from a Orography Map. • You can pick the site from a ground roughness Category Map, The site data is analysed fully by BREVe. Parameters are either set automatically but conservatively (Safe parameters within a 1 km square).

Click **Next** to move to the **Basic Data (BREVe)** page.

Basic Data (BREVe) page

This page allows you to review the site details taken from the BREVe database.

Property	Description
Site Altitude, A	The basic site altitude of your model's base.
Air Density	Air density at the site.
Ground Level	If for some reason, the level 0.0m in the Tekla Structural Designer model does not correspond to the ground level, for example a site datum may have been used rather than a building datum, then this field allows you to set the appropriate value so that the reference heights can be calculated correctly.
Fundamental Basic Wind Velocity ($v_{b,map}$)	The value required is defined as "the characteristic 10 minutes mean wind velocity, irrespective of wind direction and time of year, at 10m above ground level in open country terrain with low vegetation such as grass and isolated obstacles with separations of at least 20 obstacle heights", but is the value before the altitude correction is applied. (Valid range 1.0 to 1000 m/s). See Clause 4.2 and NA.2.4
Season Factor, c_{season}	Valid range 0.01 to 10.0 - default 1.0.
Probability Factor, c_{prob}	Valid range 0.01 to 10.0 - default 1.0.
Default Height for Internal Pressure (z_i)	Clause 7.2.9 (7) implies that all internal pressures should be calculated using a single reference height, (z_i), defaulting to the height of the structure. Leaving Use Building Height checked ensures that the value is automatically updated if the geometry of wall panels or roof panels changes.

Click **Next** to move to the **Roughness and Obstructions (BREVe)** page.

Roughness and Obstructions (BREVe) page

This page of the wizard automatically defaults the data for ground roughness and obstructions for you.

Property	Description
Terrain Category	Options available are: • Sea - this setting is for sites where the distance to sea is between 0 and 1 km, not for offshore sites. As the worst case must be for wind blowing across the sea, there is no need to specify data for upwind buildings or distance in town.

Property	Description
	• Country - the worst case must be for wind blowing across open ground, there is no need to specify data for upwind buildings or distance in town, • Town - for this category you need to specify data for upwind buildings and distance to the edge of the town, so the relevant fields are active. If you want to ignore obstructions, then you need to enter a zero value for h_{ave}. For this category, the Upwind distance from edge of town to site cannot be greater than the Upwind distance from sea to site.

Click **Next** to move to the **Orography (BREVe)** page.

Orography (BREVe) page

NOTE When using Breve Data you should really leave it up to the system as to whether orography is significant or not. If you chose not to consider orography, the actual factor is not applied; however the site data is still displayed to allow you to check that your decision to ignore it is reasonable.

Property	Description
Orographic Feature	Options available are: • None - no feature, i.e. $c_o = 1.0$. • 2D Escarp - Cliffs and Escarpments, • 3D Hill - Hills and Ridges. (See Clause A.3)
Base Altitude, A	This value is used to calculate C_{alt} instead of the Site Altitude because the Orography is significant. NOTE C_{alt} will be calculated at z_e for each wall and roof panel, not z_s.
Effective Crest Height, H	Effective crest height of the feature. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Upwind Slope, L_u	Actual length of the upwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)
Downwind Slope, L_d	Actual length of the downwind slope in the wind direction. (Figures A.2 & A.3)

Property	Description
Horizontal Distance to Crest, x	Distance upwind or downwind from the crest to the building site. (Figures A.2 & A.3)

If on the Data Source page you chose to consider tall neighbouring structures, clicking **Next** takes you to the **Tall Neighbouring Structure**, otherwise it takes you to the **Results (BREVe)** page.

Tall Neighbouring Structure page

For all methods, if Consider Tall Neighbouring Structure was checked, the penultimate page allows you to determine if tall neighbouring structures affect the design of this structure. (Clause A.4)

Otherwise, the wizard will proceed directly to the Results page and the actual heights of wall and roof panels are used throughout.

The parameters, Height of Tall Neighbour, h_{high} , Largest Horizontal Dimension of Tall Neighbour, d_{large} and Distance to Tall Neighbour, x are all as described on Figure A.4 of the code.

Property	Description
Average Height of Neighbours, h_{ave}	The default is calculated from the BREVe data or the values entered for the Roughness & Obstructions. If Override calculated dimension is cleared, then the value will be updated whenever the wizard is run, otherwise the user-value is used. (Figure A.4)
Height of this structure, h_{low}	The field is for information only - difference between top of highest wall / roof panel and ground level in the model. (Figure A.4)

Click **Next** to go to the **Results (BREVe)** page.

Results (BREVe) page

The final page of the wizard is a summary of the results - peak velocity pressure ranges.

Initially there are 4 orthogonal wind directions relative to the Tekla Structural Designer axes, (not geographical North), but you are able to update this using the Dir. buttons and / or changing the direction value as required. (Note: Minimum 1° difference between directions). At least one direction must be defined.

You are able to use the **<<Details...>>** button to obtain additional information, including the values of intermediate factors used in the calculations.

BREVe Data

BREVe determines the parameters required to calculate $q_p(z)$ for each height in the building at 30° intervals, (0° to 330°).

For each required wind direction the worst case q_p is used for each height, based on splitting the difference to the next direction, with a maximum of ± 45 degrees. Within these ranges q_p is not interpolated.

Theoretically, it is possible for a quadrant to use different 30° directions for each height, so the critical wind direction is not displayed in the summary.

The Vortex view shows the Peak Velocity Pressures calculated for each reference height for each 30° sector.

Finishing the Wind Wizard

When you click **Finish**, the wizard generates the wind zones for the entire building for each of the specified wind directions.

Before moving on you should take a moment to inspect the Wind Model status on the Project Workspace> Status tab, in order to check that no [Limitations \(page 25\)](#) have been encountered.

EC1991 1-4 Wind Zones

Enter a short description of your topic here (optional).

At the end of the **Wind Wizard...**, the system creates default zones for all the walls and roof panels for each of the defined wind directions.

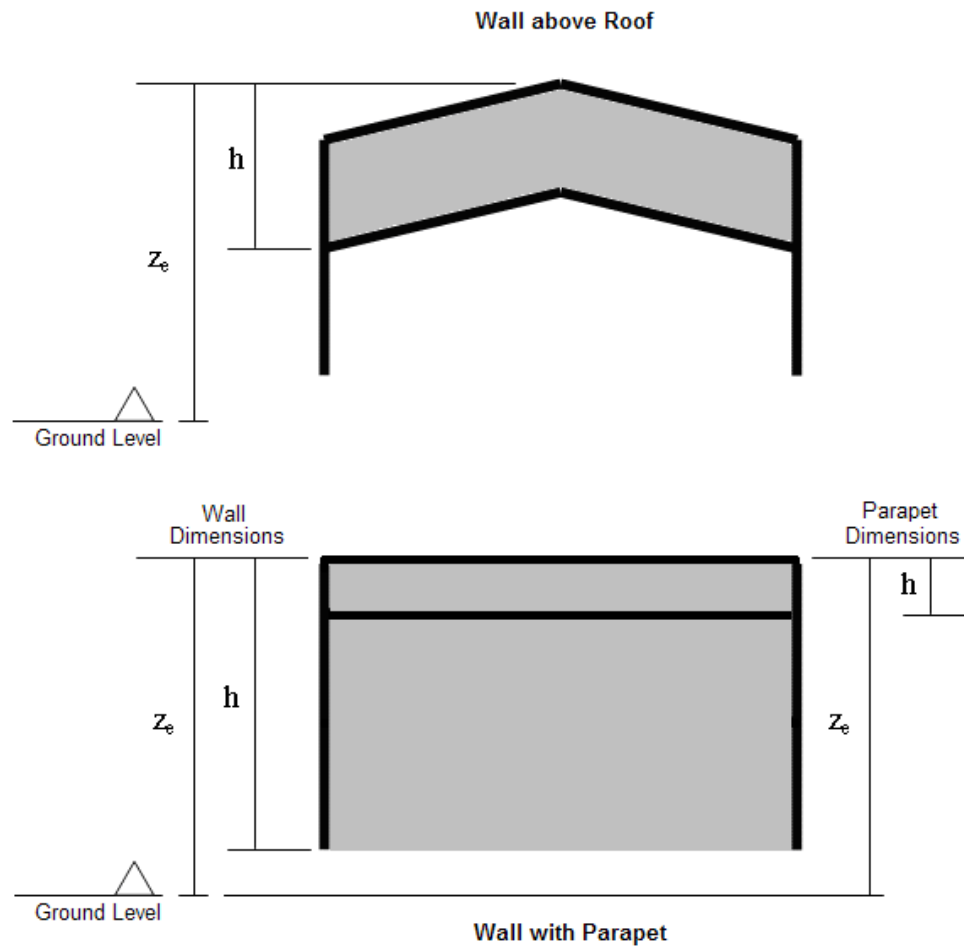
If any errors have occurred in this process, a red cross appears next to Pressure Zones in the Project Workspace.

Basic Geometry

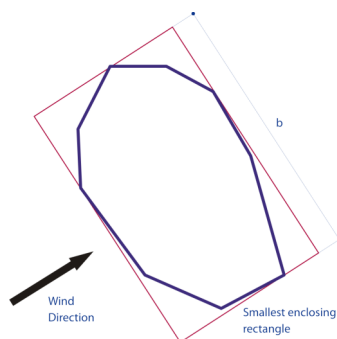
The basic building geometry is assessed as follows:

- Reference Height (z_e) - is taken as the difference between highest point on wall or roof panel and ground level.
- Wall height (h) - is taken as the difference between highest and lowest points on the wall panel.

These definitions apply to wall panels without parapets and the actual parapets. Wall panels with parapets above them will take their highest point from the parapet. See the diagram below.



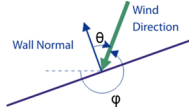
- Roof height (h) - as z_e - taken as the difference between highest point on wall or roof panel and ground level. This definition does not handle the upper roof of inset storey but is conservative.
- The Building Breadth, b is calculated from the smallest enclosing rectangle around the whole building (considered over all roof and wall panels only) for the given direction. You can override the calculated value in case the Tekla Structural Designer model does not include the whole building.



Wall Zones

Wall Type

We assess each wall panel to determine if it is a windward, leeward or side wall. We classify the type of wall dependent on q :



- $\theta \leq 60$ deg - Windward,
- $\theta \geq 120$ deg - Leeward,
- Other walls are classed as Side.

Windward walls	Windward walls have a single zone and Table 7.1 is used with interpolation for h/d .
Leeward walls	Leeward walls have a single zone and Table 7.1 is used with interpolation for h/d .
Side walls	In all cases, side walls have the relevant number of zones from Figure 7.5 and Table 7.1 is used. There is no guidance in the standard for Irregular Flushed Faces, Recesses and Downwind Re-entrant Corners that are covered in BS6399. However, it is reasonable to automatically detect Irregular Flushed Faces and process them as described in BS6399 Clause 2.4.4.1 and Figure 14. The program also detects potential Recesses but only generates a warning and no special handling occurs. Downwind re-entrant corners are conservatively ignored.
Parapets	Parapets are assessed for return corners and then classified as windward, windward oblique, leeward or leeward oblique dependent on q. Depending on the classification, parapets will either have a single zone, or up to seven zones (determined by extrapolation from Figure 7.19). Table 7.9 is used with interpolation for Solidity and l/h. NOTE An "r" suffix on zone name indicates return corners have been detected. Side Parapets are Special Zero zones, i.e. no nett pressure.

Roof Zones

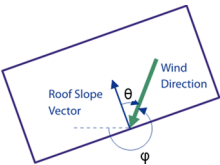
Roof zones are automatically generated where possible for each wind direction. In essence each roof panel is assessed in its own right based on its properties. The interconnectivity of touching roof panels is not generally considered.

NOTE The Advisory note on page 34 of the UK NA is followed so that zones and coefficients are generated according to BS6399.

Direction

Internally the roof slope vector (line of maximum slope) is determined from the normal vector, with its direction always giving a positive slope angle, i.e. the roof slope vector must always point up the slope.

We calculate the angle between the wind direction and projection of roof slope vector onto horizontal plane (q in range -180° to $+180^{\circ}$).

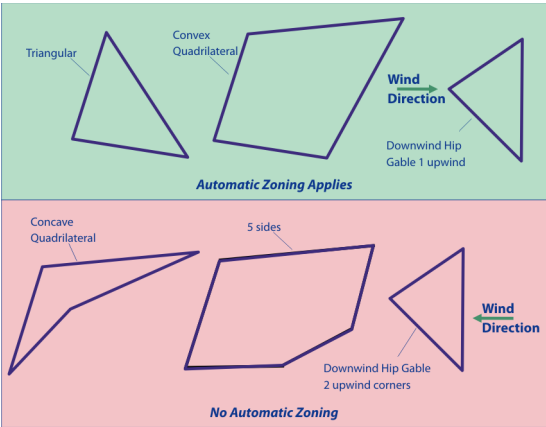


Scaling Dimension, e

The scaling dimension $e = \min(b, 2h)$

Automatic Zoning

Automatic zoning normally only applies to all triangular roof panels and quadrilateral roof panels that are not concave, that is that all of the internal angles $< 180^{\circ}$. However, additionally, it only applies to Hip Gable roofs if they are triangular, and Hip Main roofs if they are quadrilateral. Further, Downwind Slope Hip Gables must not have 2 upwind corners.



Dimensions	All zone dimensions are specified in plan.
Flat Roofs	See BS 6399 Clause 2.5.1, Figure 16 and Table 8.
Monopitch Roofs	See BS 6399 Clause 2.5.2.3, Figure 19 and Table 9.
Duopitch Roofs	See BS 6399 Clause 2.5.2.4, Figure 20 and Table 10.

Hip Gable	See BS 6399 Clause 2.5.3, Figure 21 and Table 11.
Hip Main	See BS 6399 Clause 2.5.3, Figure 21 and Table 11.
Mansard Roofs	If you manually set the connected roof types to Mansard, then the program will correctly identify the special cases in BS6399 Figures 17c, 22a and 22b, and use the correct tables and values. See BS 6399 Clauses 2.5.1.6.2 & 2.5.4
Multi-bay Roofs	We allow you to interpret BS 6399 Clause 2.5.5 and Figure 23 as you think appropriate and manually define the roof types and sub-types accordingly. You also have the ability to manually set the multi-bay position for each roof panel for each wind direction: • Not Multi-Bay - for this wind direction (conservative default), • Upwind Bay - first bay of many for this wind direction, • Second Bay - for this wind direction, • Third or more Bay - for this wind direction. Where the reduction applies, the values of all coefficients are reduced according to Table 12.

Non-Automatic Zoning

Where automatic zoning does not apply, the system creates a single zone covering the entire roof as follows:

- Hip Gable - B for upwind, B for downwind, D for side,
- Flat - B,
- Monopitch - B,
- Duopitch - B for upwind, A for downwind, B for side,
- Hip Gable - B for upwind, B for downwind, D for side,
- Hip Main - B for upwind, A for downwind, D for side.

Creating wind loadcases to EC1991 1-4

It is not practical to automatically determine critical combinations and thus required wind loadcases, therefore you control the generation of appropriate Wind Loadcases manually. This is achieved via the **Wind Loadcases** dialog box (accessed from the **Load** tab).

The **Auto** button on the dialog creates a default set of loadcases in each of the directions, i.e.

- -0.3 for C_{pi} with -ve roof C_{pe} ; not Overall

- -0.3 for C_{pi} with +ve roof C_{pe} ; not Overall
- +0.2 for C_{pi} with -ve roof C_{pe} ; not Overall
- +0.2 for C_{pi} with +ve roof C_{pe} ; not Overall
- Overall with zero for C_{pi} ; -ve roof C_{pe}

Alternatively you can create loadcases manually using the **Add** button. You then specify which direction the loadcase will be created for and set default values for all the zone loads generated in the loadcase.

Once generated these loadcases are standard loadcases so you can include them in combinations in the normal manner.

Try to use engineering judgement to identify the critical loadcases so that the number of load combinations that need to be considered can be minimized. Use the **Delete** button to remove wind loadcases you do not wish to consider.

Add loadcases

NOTE The following instructions assume that the **Structural Factor - Automatically calculate separate c_s and c_d factors** checkbox at the bottom of the dialog is unchecked. This checkbox can only ever be checked if working to the UK National Annex.

1. Click **Add** to create a row in which to define the loadcase.
2. Select the **Direction** the loadcase will be created for. The loadcase **Name** is automatically updated to reflect the input parameters, but it can be edited if required, (by unchecking the **Auto** checkbox).
3. Select **Overall** if the loadcase is to be specifically used for examining the overall behaviour of the structure.

NOTE It may be necessary for you to create a second copy of the loadcase with this checkbox cleared if the loadcase is also used for designing elements.

4. If required, select **Use +ve C_{pe}**
Where 2 sets of coefficients are given in a table for roof zones, this checkbox indicates if the negative or positive C_{pe} value is to be used.
5. Specify the required value of the internal pressure coefficient, **C_{pi}**
6. Specify the required value of the structural factor, **$c_s c_d$**
7. Click **OK** to finish, or **Add** to continue adding more loadcases.

Auto generate loadcases

NOTE The following instructions assume that the **Structural Factor - Automatically calculate separate c_s and c_d factors** checkbox at the bottom of the dialog is unchecked. This checkbox can only ever be checked if working to the UK National Annex.

1. Click **Auto**. 5 loadcases are automatically generated in each of the four directions.
2. Check the loadcases are as you require.
3. Specify the required value of the structural factor, $c_s c_d$ for each case.
4. Click **OK** to finish.

Add loadcases using size and dynamic factors (UK National Annex only)

The UK National Annex states that the **Structural Factor, $c_s c_d$** may be separated into a size factor c_s and a dynamic factor c_d .

1. Ensure the **Structural Factor - Automatically calculate separate c_s and c_d factors** checkbox is selected.

NOTE When the above checkbox is selected c_d is calculated using Figure NA.9, taking into account the **Structural Damping, δ_s** value (default 0.050) specified by the user. c_s is calculated using Table NA.3.

2. Specify the required **Structural Damping, δ_s** value.
3. Click **Add** to create a row in which to define the loadcase.
4. Select the **Direction** the loadcase will be created for. The loadcase **Name** is automatically updated to reflect the input parameters, but it can be edited if required, (by unchecking the **Auto** checkbox).
5. Select **Overall** if the loadcase is to be specifically used for examining the overall behaviour of the structure.

NOTE It may be necessary for you to create a second copy of the loadcase with this checkbox cleared if the loadcase is also used for designing elements.

When **Overall** is selected the b+h cell is marked inactive. In this case, for each wall and roof, the program calculates b+h using b & h from the zone properties for the relevant wind direction.

6. If **Overall** is not selected, specify **b+h**

When designing elements, (beams, columns, braces etc), Table NA.3 in the UK NA implies that b and h should be the width and height respectively of

an element. Due to the nature of the loads in the program, it is not practical to do this automatically, and so you should specify a value to be used in the loads generated for this loadcase (default 5.0m).

7. If required, select **Use +ve C_{pe}**

Where 2 sets of coefficients are given in a table for roof zones, this checkbox indicates if the negative or positive C_{pe} value is to be used.

8. Specify the required value of the internal pressure coefficient, **C_{pi}** To be calculated by you from Clause 7.2.9.
9. Click **OK** to finish, or **Add** to continue adding more loadcases.

Auto generate loadcases using size and dynamic factors (UK National Annex only)

The UK National Annex states that the **Structural Factor, $c_s c_d$** may be separated into a size factor **c_s** and a dynamic factor **c_d** .

1. Ensure the **Structural Factor - Automatically calculate separate c_s and c_d factors** checkbox is selected.

NOTE When the above checkbox is selected **c_d** is calculated using Figure NA.9, taking into account the **Structural Damping, δ_s** value (default 0.050) specified by the user. **c_s** is calculated using Table NA.3.

2. Specify the required **Structural Damping, δ_s** value.
3. Click **Auto**. 5 loadcases are automatically generated in each of the four directions.
4. Check the loadcases are as you require, then click **OK** to finish.

Review wind loadcases

Once wind loadcases have been created they can be reviewed graphically by opening a wind view for the required direction and then selecting the desired wind loadcase from the Loading list.

1.4 Wind wizard (CTE DB SE-AE)

This configuration of the wind wizard is specifically for Spanish users working to Eurocodes.

To access it, in Model Settings the design code region has to be set to **Europe (Eurocode)** and the wind loading code has to be set to **CTE DB SE-AE**.

Once wall and roof panels are in place, you use this version of the wind wizard to define sufficient site information to calculate the peak wind velocity and velocity pressures for the required wind directions and heights around the building, (that is the Reference Heights (z_e and z_i) for each wall panel or roof panel).

The wind velocity calculations are automated, with the data source for the calculations being either input directly for the worst case, or input directly for each direction.

Unless explicitly stated all calculations in the wind wizard are in accordance with CTE DB SE-AE.

Limitations

The following limitations apply specifically to the CTE DB SE-AE Wind wizard.

- 3.3.1 Generalities
- Buildings at altitude $\leq 2000\text{m}$
- Building with slenderness < 6 (dynamic affects not accounted for)
- 3.3.4 Wind coefficient of apartment buildings – not used
- 3.3.5 Wind coefficient of warehouses and open-plan constructions not used

Data Source page

When you select **Wind Wizard** from the Load ribbon, this is the first page that is displayed.

Property	Description
Data Source	There are two choices of wind data source: • Worst Case Data • Data for Each Direction - choosing this option allows you to specify data for multiple wind directions.

Clicking Next takes you to the **Basic data** page below.

Basic data page

This page is used you to define the site details.

Property	Description
Air density	You need to enter air density at the site.

Property	Description
Ground level in Model (Ignore Wind Below)	If for some reason, the level 0.0m in the Tekla Structural Designer model does not correspond to the ground level, for example a site datum may have been used rather than a building datum, then this field allows you to set the appropriate value so that the reference heights can be calculated correctly.
Fundamental Basic Wind Velocity, $v_{b,0}$	The default of 29m/s is for the maximum region and can be reduced as required.
Default Height for Internal Pressure, z_i	All internal pressures are calculated using a single reference height, (z_i), defaulting to the height of the structure.
Use Building Height	Leaving this option selected ensures that the height for internal pressure value is automatically updated if the geometry of wall panels or roof panels changes.

Depending on whether you chose worst case data, or data for each direction on the **Data Source** page, clicking **Next** either takes you to the **Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case)** page or the **Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction)** page.

Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page

If you selected the Worst Case Data Source you are required to select a single Terrain Category on this page.

Property	Description
Terrain Category	Reference should be made to CTE DB SE-AE when determining an appropriate Terrain Category. The terrain category establishes the following values: • Terrain Factor (k) • Roughness Length (L) • Height above Ground (z)

Clicking **Next** takes you to the **Results** page.

Roughness and Obstructions (Data for each Direction) page

If you selected the Data for each Direction Data Source, the next page of the wizard allows you to select the terrain category in each wind direction.

Property	Description
Direction	Initially there are 4 orthogonal wind directions relative to the Tekla Structural Designer axes, (not geographical North), but you are able to update these using the Add Dir. and Del Dir. buttons and / or changing the direction value as required. (Note: Minimum 1° difference between directions). At least one direction must be defined. Each row of the grid operates in a similar manner to the relevant fields of the Roughness and Obstructions (Worst case) page.

Clicking Next takes you to the **Results** page.

Results page

The final page of the wizard is a summary of the results - peak velocity pressure ranges.

Initially there are 4 orthogonal wind directions relative to the Tekla Structural Designer axes, (not geographical North), but except for the **Data for Each Direction method**, you are able to update this using the **Dir.** buttons and / or changing the direction value as required. (Note : Minimum 1° difference between directions). At least one direction must be defined.

You are able to use the **<<Details>>** button to view additional information, including the values of intermediate factors used in the calculations.

When you click **Finish**, the wizard generates the wind zones for the entire building for each of the specified wind directions.

NOTE Before moving on you should take a moment to inspect the Wind Model status on the Project Workspace> Status tab, in order to check that no issues have been encountered.

See also

[EC1991 1-4 Wind Zones \(page 42\)](#)

[Creating wind loadcases to EC1991 1-4 \(page 46\)](#)

1.5 Snow wizard (Eurocode)

The snow wizard enables you to define sufficient site information to create the snow loadcases required.

The Basic Data and Loadcases pages displayed in the wizard vary according to the Eurocode National Annex that is being worked to.

Plain Eurocode, Ireland and Sweden National Annex

Basic Data	
Property	Description
Exposure Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Thermal Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Coefficient for Exceptional Snow Loads	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Snow Density	Define the density of snow. (Default 2.0 kN/m ²)
Snow Load	User defined value. (No default value)

Loadcases	
Property	Description
Loadcase	Automatically generated wind loadcase title. The loadcase title can be manually renamed if required.
Apply	Options are: • Checked If checked the loadcase will be created. • Unchecked If unchecked the loadcase will not be created. NOTE Undrifted (Cases A-1, B1-1, B1-3, B2-1, B3-1, B3-3) • Loads in these cases are generated automatically Drifted Snow Load (Cases A-2, B1-2, B1-4, B2-2, B2-3, B3-2, B3-4) • You must create the loads in these cases manually NOTE The EC/NA recommends which loadcases to apply.

Loadcases	
Property	Description
Loadcase Type (Plain Eurocode and Ireland National Annex)	Each loadcase has a loadcase type which can be: • Snow • Snow > 1000m • Snow Drift Refer to EC 1991-1-3 Annex A, Table A1
Loadcase Type (Sweden National Annex)	Each loadcase has a loadcase type which can be: • Snow • Snow $S_k > 2 \text{ kN/m}^2$ • Snow $S_k > 3 \text{ kN/m}^2$ • Snow Drift Refer to EC 1991-1-3 Annex A, Table A1.
Number of wind directions to be considered for drifted snow	You can select between 1 and 4 separate loadcases to be generated for each 'Drifted' loadcase (identified by...1, ...2, etc. appended to the drifted loadcase name). For example if you have checked the box to apply loadcase "Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted" and selected 2 wind directions, the following loadcases will be created: • Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 1 • Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 2

UK National Annex

Basic Data	
Property	Description
Exposure Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Thermal Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Coefficient for Exceptional Snow Loads	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Snow Density	Define the density of snow. (Default 2.0 kN/m ²)
Zone Number, Z	Zone Number. (Default 2.0 kN/m ²)
Altitude, A	Altitude. (Default 1.0)
Characteristic Ground Snow Load, s_k	Characteristic ground snow load calculated as $s_k = (0.15 + (0.1 * Z + 0.05)) + ((A - 100)/525)$

Loadcases	
Property	Description
Loadcase	Automatically generated wind loadcase title. The loadcase title can be manually renamed if required.
Apply	Options are: • Checked If checked the loadcase will be created. • Unchecked If unchecked the loadcase will not be created. NOTE Undrifted (Cases A-1, B1-1, B1-3, B2-1, B3-1, B3-3) • Loads in these cases are generated automatically Drifted Snow Load (Cases A-2, B1-2, B1-4, B2-2, B2-3, B3-2, B3-4) • You must create the loads in these cases manually NOTE The EC/NA recommends which loadcases to apply.
Loadcase Type	Each loadcase has a loadcase type which can be: • Snow • Snow > 1000m • Snow Drift Refer to EC 1991-1-3 Annex A, Table A1.
Number of wind directions to be considered for drifted snow	You can select between 1 and 4 separate loadcases to be generated for each 'Drifted' loadcase (identified by...1, ...2, etc. appended to the drifted loadcase name). For example if you have checked the box to apply loadcase "Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted" and selected 2 wind directions, the following loadcases will be created: • Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 1 • Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 2

Finland National Annex

Basic Data	
Property	Description
Topography	Options are: • Windswept • Normal (Default) • Sheltered
Exposure Coefficient	Value determined from Topography.
Thermal Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Coefficient for Exceptional Snow Loads	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Snow Weight Density	Define the density of snow. (Default 2.0 kN/m ²)
Characteristic Ground Snow Load	User defined value. (No default value)

Loadcases	
Property	Description
Loadcase	Automatically generated wind loadcase title. The loadcase title can be manually renamed if required.
Apply	Options are: • Checked If checked the loadcase will be created. • Unchecked If unchecked the loadcase will not be created. NOTE Undrifted (Cases A-1, B1-1, B1-3, B2-1, B3-1, B3-3) • Loads in these cases are generated automatically Drifted Snow Load (Cases A-2, B1-2, B1-4, B2-2, B2-3, B3-2, B3-4) • You must create the loads in these cases manually NOTE The EC/NA recommends which loadcases to apply.
Loadcase Type	Each loadcase has a loadcase type which can be:

Loadcases	
Property	Description
	- Snow - Snow, $S_k > 2.75 \text{ kN/m}^2$ - Snow Drift - Ice Refer to EC 1992-1-3 Annex A, Table A1.
Number of wind directions to be considered for drifted snow	You can select between 1 and 4 separate loadcases to be generated for each 'Drifted' loadcase (identified by...1, ...2, etc. appended to the drifted loadcase name). For example if you have checked the box to apply loadcase "Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted" and selected 2 wind directions, the following loadcases will be created: - Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 1 - Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 2

Norway National Annex

Basic Data	
Property	Description
Topography	Options are: - Windswept - Normal (Default) - Sheltered
Exposure Coefficient	Value determined from Topography.
Thermal Coefficient	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Coefficient for Exceptional Snow Loads	User defined value. (Default 1.0)
Snow Weight Density	Define the density of snow. (Default 2.0 kN/m^2)
Altitude, H	User defined value.
Basic Reference Altitude, H_g	User defined value.
Basic Snow Load, s_{k0}	User defined value.
Δ_{sk}	User defined value.
$s_{k,maks}$	User defined value.

Basic Data	
Property	Description
Characteristic Ground Snow Load, s_k	Automatically determined from the above values.

Loadcases	
Property	Description
Loadcase	Automatically generated wind loadcase title. The loadcase title can be manually renamed if required.
Apply	Options are: • Checked If checked the loadcase will be created. • Unchecked If unchecked the loadcase will not be created. NOTE Undrifted (Cases A-1, B1-1, B1-3, B2-1, B3-1, B3-3) • Loads in these cases are generated automatically Drifted Snow Load (Cases A-2, B1-2, B1-4, B2-2, B2-3, B3-2, B3-4) • You must create the loads in these cases manually NOTE The EC/NA recommends which loadcases to apply.
Loadcase Type	Each loadcase has a loadcase type which can be: • Snow • Snow > 1000m • Snow Drift Refer to EC 1992-1-3 Annex A, Table A1.
Number of wind directions to be considered for drifted snow	You can select between 1 and 4 separate loadcases to be generated for each 'Drifted' loadcase (identified by....1, ...2, etc. appended to the drifted loadcase name). For example if you have checked the box to apply loadcase "Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted" and selected 2 wind directions, the following loadcases will be created:

Loadcases	
Property	Description
	• Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 1 • Snow Load - Case A - 2) Drifted 2

1.6 Combinations (Eurocode)

Once your loadcases have been generated as required, you then combine them into load combinations; these can either be created manually, by clicking **Add...** - or with the assistance of the [Combination Generator \(page 62\)](#), by clicking **Generate...**

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Manually defined combinations \(Eurocode\) \(page 59\)](#)
- [Nationally Determined Parameters \(Eurocode\) \(page 9\)](#)
- [Equivalent horizontal forces \(EHF\) \(Eurocode\) \(page 60\)](#)
- [Minimum lateral loads \(MLL\) \(Eurocode\) \(page 60\)](#)
- [Combination generator \(Eurocode\) \(page 62\)](#)
- [Combination classes \(Eurocode\) \(page 68\)](#)

Manually defined combinations (Eurocode)

As you build up combinations manually, the combination factors are automatically adjusted as loadcases are added and removed from the combination.

If you add/remove a loadcase type from a combination - the factors are defaulted as follows:

- 'Self weight' - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Slab Dry' - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Dead' - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Imposed' - default Strength factor = 1.5, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Roof Imposed' - default Strength factor = 1.5, default Service factor = 1.0
- With an Imposed loadcase
 - 'Wind' - default Strength factor = 0.75, default Service factor = 0.5
 - 'Snow' - default Strength factor = 0.75, default Service factor = 0.5

- With No Imposed loadcase
 - 'Wind' - default Strength factor = 1.5, default Service factor = 1.0
- With Wind loadcase
 - 'Snow' - default Strength factor = 0.75, default Service factor = 0.5
- With no Wind loadcase
 - 'Snow' - default Strength factor = 1.5, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Snow drift'- default Strength factor = 1.0, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Temperature'- default Strength factor = 1.0, default Service factor = 1.0
- 'Settlement'- default Strength factor = 1.0, default Service factor = 1.0

Equivalent horizontal forces (EHF) (Eurocode)

EHFs are a set of notional lateral loads used to mimic the effect of construction global imperfections (like out of plumb). The Eurocode requires they are applied to all combinations. (Lateral wind combinations therefore should also have EHF applied).

EHFs are automatically derived from the factored loadcases within the current combination. They are applied in the analysis as a horizontal force at each beam column intersection as a specified percentage of the vertical load in the column at the column/beam intersection.

Settings that control the EHF percentage can be adjusted from .

From here, the structure height and numbers of columns in X and Y allow ϕ , the % needed to calculate the EHF to be determined. (The default settings conservatively result in 0.5% EHF in both directions). A facility is also provided to override this value if required.

Four loadcases (EHF_{Dir1+}, EHF_{Dir1-}, EHF_{Dir2+}, EHF_{Dir2-}) are then made available for applying EHF in each of the building directions when creating load combinations.

Once you have created EHF combinations and performed the analysis, you can view the magnitude of the notional loads from the project workspace. You can also display their magnitude and direction graphically in a results view.

Minimum lateral loads (MLL) (Eurocode)

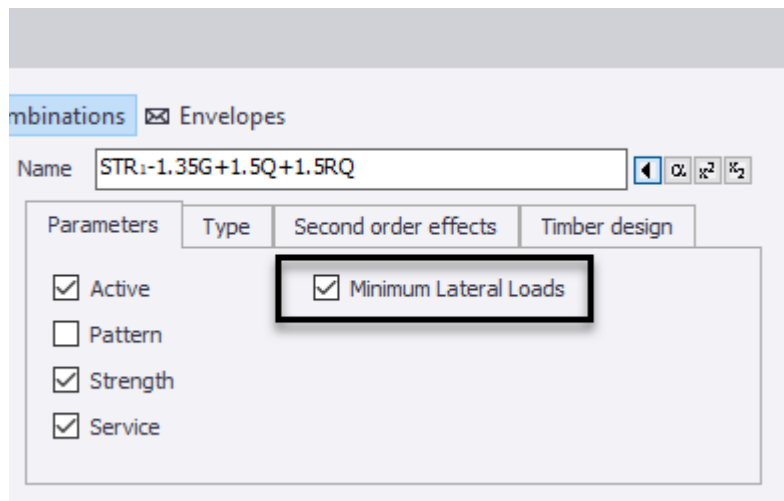
MLLs are sets of notional lateral loads that can be applied in order to cater for a minimum lateral loading for wind.

You are able to create up to two minimum lateral load sets, 'Case A' and 'Case B'. The loads in each set being specified as a percentage of gravity loading.

These are then applied in the analysis as a horizontal force at each node in each level.

Settings to activate and define the MLLs are found in .

In addition to defining how the loads are to be calculated in **Model Settings**, you also are required to specify the gravity combination to be used for the calculation. This second part is done from the Loading dialog box - the required combination being identified by the Minimum Lateral Loads checkbox on the Parameters tab of the Combinations page.



The MLL loadcases are then made available in each of the building directions when creating load combinations.

Once you have specified the gravity combination to be used and performed the analysis, you can view the magnitude of the loads from the project workspace. You can also display their magnitude and direction graphically in a results view.

NOTE There is a subtle/important difference between MLLs and EHF - the EHF loading in every combination is dependent on the gravity loading in that combination. Min Lateral Load (MLL) - creates fixed loadcases which are then included in combinations. So the MLL case used in a combination can be based on gravity loads that don't exist in that combination.

Minimum lateral load requirements of the Singapore National Annex

The foreword to the "Singapore National Annex to EN 1991-1-4 Wind Actions" states:

- "For continuation of an established design philosophy, all buildings should be capable of resisting, as a minimum, a design ultimate horizontal load applied at each floor or roof level simultaneously equal to 1.5% of the characteristic dead weight of the structure between mid-height of the

storey below and either mid-height of the storey above or roof surface. The design ultimate wind load should not be taken as less than this value when considering load combinations."

In Tekla Structural Designer this requirement can be catered for by setting up and designing for appropriate minimum lateral load combinations as described above.

Combination generator (Eurocode)

NOTE The following are not considered in **Combination Generator**:

- **Construction Stage** combinations - these must be created manually.
 - Temperature and settlement loadcase types - these must be added manually.
-

Open the Combination Generator

1. On the **Load** tab, click  **Combination**.
This opens the **Combinations** page. On this page, you can see all currently existing load combinations.
2. Click **Generate...**
The **Combination Generator** dialog box opens.

Initial Parameters page

At the start of the generator, you need to define certain parameters so that the correct combinations are created. When these have been specified, click **Next** to continue.

Combination for design of structural members (STR)

You can choose between:

- Table A1.2(B) - Eq 6.10, or
- Table A1.2(B) - Eq 6.10,a&b

Eq 6.10 is always equal to or more conservative than either 6.10a or 6.10b. The most economic combination of 6.10a or b will depend on if permanent actions are greater than 4.5 times the variable actions (except for storage loads).

Include EQU combinations - Table A1.2(A) - Eq 6.10

You should select this option if you require to create an EQU (loss of equilibrium of the structure) combination. This combination is not used for

any design and is purely for you to verify equilibrium. By default the EQU combination is not included.

Include GEO combinations - Table A1.2(C) - Eq 6.10

You should select this option in order to create the GEO combinations required for foundation design.

Include Accidental combinations - Table A2.5 Eq 6.11a&b

If you have defined an accidental load type such as Snow drift you should select this option for the correct load combinations to be generated.

NOTE The Combinations Generator refers to the relevant National Annex when determining the g factors to apply in the above combinations, as they may vary from the Base Eurocode values.

Include Seismic combinations - Table A2.5 Eq 6.12a&b

If you have defined seismic loads you should select this option for the correct load combinations to be generated.

Delete/Replace combinations

You can choose to delete all the existing combinations or to replace only those combinations with the same names as those generated by this run.

Scenario

The **Combination Generator** automatically names each combination according to its content. You can add a 'Scenario' prefix in front of the generated names or leave 'Scenario' blank if no prefix is required. By entering a 'Scenario' and selecting 'Replace only combinations generated by this run' you can re-run the **Combination Generator** to rapidly generate additional combinations for alternative scenarios, (such as erection, or operating). On the Initial Parameters page, specify the initial parameters according to your needs.

Combinations page

This page of the generator lists the combinations applicable (with appropriate factors) for the selections made on the first page. Any factors in bold will be multiplied by the relevant ψ factors for that loadcase.

The type of structure chosen on the previous page affects which combinations default to being generated.

The combination names are automatically generated as per the table below:

No.	BS EN 1990 State and eqn	Type	Load combination
1	Str – 6.10	Gravity	$Str_1 - \gamma_{GJ,sup} D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_{QR}$
2	"	"	$Str_2 - \gamma_{GJ,sup} D + \gamma_Q \psi_0 I + \gamma_Q S$

No.	BS EN 1990 State and eqn	Type	Load combination
3	"	Lateral (EHF)	$Str_{3,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_{QRI} + EHF$
4	"	"	$Str_{4,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S + EHF$
5	"	"	$Str_{5,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_QS + EHF$
6	"	Lateral (Wind)	$Str_{6,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S + \gamma_Q\psi_0W + EHF$
7	"	"	$Str_{7,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_QS + \gamma_Q\psi_0W + EHF$
8	"	"	$Str_{8,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S + \gamma_QW + EHF$
9	"	Uplift	$Str_{9,n} - \gamma_{GJ,inf}D + \gamma_QW + EHF$
1	Str - 6.10a&b	Gravity	$Str_1 - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_Q\psi_{0RI}$
2	"	"	$Str_2 - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S$
3	"	"	$Str_3 - \xi\gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_{QRI}$
4	"	"	$Str_4 - \xi\gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_QS$
5	"	Lateral (EHF)	$Str_{5,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_Q\psi_{0RI} + EHF$
6	"	"	$Str_{6,n} - \gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_Q\psi_{0I} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S + EHF$
7	"	"	$Str_{7,n} - \xi\gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_{QRI} + EHF$
8	"	"	$Str_{8,n} - \xi\gamma_{GJ,sup}D + \gamma_{QI} + \gamma_Q\psi_0S + EHF$

No.	BS EN 1990 State and eqn	Type	Load combination
9	"	"	$Str_{9.n} - \xi Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q S + EHF$
10	"	Lateral (Wind)	$Str_{10.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + Y_Q \Psi_{0W} + EHF$
11	"	"	$Str_{11.n} - \xi Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q I + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + Y_Q \Psi_{0W} + EHF$
12	"	"	$Str_{12.n} - \xi Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q S + Y_Q \Psi_{0W} + EHF$
13	"	"	$Str_{13.n} - \xi Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + Y_Q W + EHF$
14	"	Uplift	$Str_{14.n} - Y_{GJ,inf}D + Y_Q W + EHF$
1	EQU - 6.10	Gravity	$Equ_1 - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q I + Y_Q RI$
1	Geo - 6.10	Lateral (EHF)	$Geo_{1.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q I + Y_Q RI + EHF$
2	"	"	$Geo_{2.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q I + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + EHF$
3	"	"	$Geo_{3.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q S + EHF$
4	"	Lateral (Wind)	$Geo_{4.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q I + Y_Q \Psi_{0W} + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + EHF$
5	"	"	$Geo_{5.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q S + Y_Q \Psi_{0W} + EHF$
6	"	"	$Geo_{6.n} - Y_{GJ,sup}D + Y_Q \Psi_{0I} + Y_Q \Psi_{0S} + Y_Q W + EHF$
7	"	Uplift	$Geo_{7.n} - Y_{GJ,inf}D + Y_{Q,1}W + EHF$

No.	BS EN 1990 State and eqn	Type	Load combination
1	Acc 6.11	Lateral (EHF)	$Acc_{1,n} - G + A_d + \Psi_1 I + EHF$
2	"	Lateral (Wind)	$Acc_{2,n} - G + A_d + \Psi_2 I + \Psi_1 W + EHF$
1	Seis 6.12	Seismic	$Seis_{,n} - G + A_{Ed} + \Psi_2 RI + \Psi_2 S + EHF$
2	"		$Seis_{,n} - G + A_{Ed} + EHF$

NOTE If working to the Swedish NA (EK11), although shown in the above table, variable actions are no longer considered in Tekla Structural Designer combinations of actions based on equation 6.10a

NOTE If minimum lateral loadcases have been specified in **Model Settings** extra combinations will be created in addition to the above.

1. Use the 'Generate' box to control which combinations are to be generated.
2. Should you require, you can also adjust the default strength factors applied in each generated combination.

NOTE The combination names are generated automatically according to their content and cannot be edited at this stage.

3. Click **Next**.

Service page

This page indicates which combinations are to be checked for serviceability and the factors applied.

1. Should you require, you can adjust the default factors applied in each generated combination.
2. Click **Next**.

Wind/EHF directions page

This page allows you to reduce the number of combinations generated automatically when [EHF \(page 60\)](#) forces are applied to load combinations with

wind. You are able to set any combination of EHF to act with a particular wind load case.

By default (on first entry), none are set for any wind load case. You are required to set the directions and factors here as appropriate to be used when generating the combinations.

1. Use the 'Dir' boxes to specify the directions as appropriate.
2. Should you require, you can also adjust the default factors applied in each direction.
3. Click **Next**.

EHF (global imperfections) page

This page allows you to apply the [EHFs \(page 60\)](#) specified in for specific combinations.

You can specify EHF and factors in each of four directions. For each direction selected, a separate NHF combination will be generated.

Any combination with wind in is automatically greyed as all the required information has already been set via the previous page.

1. Use the 'Dir' boxes to specify the directions in which the global imperfections are to be applied.
2. Should you require, you can also adjust the default factors applied in each direction.
3. Click **Next**.

Minimum Lateral Loads page

If [minimum lateral loads \(page 60\)](#) have been specified via , this page allows you to apply them. (If set to 'None' this page is not displayed.)

1. Use the 'Dir' boxes to specify the directions in which the minimum lateral loads are to be applied.
2. Use the droplist at the top of the page to select the gravity combination from which the minimum lateral load values are to be calculated.

NOTE The combination used for calculating the MLLs can be different to the one to which the MLLs are applied.

3. Should you require, you can also adjust the default factors applied in each direction.
4. Click **Finish**.

The **Combination Generator** closes and you are returned to the Combinations page of the **Loading** dialog box. The combinations selected in

this run of the generator either add to or replace any existing combinations (according to your selection on the Initial Parameters page).

Combination classes (Eurocode)

Having created your combinations you classify them as: construction stage, gravity, lateral, seismic, seismic RSA, modal mass, or staged construction.

NOTE If generated via the Combinations generator they are classified for you automatically.

Then (where applicable) you indicate whether they are to be checked for strength or service conditions, or both. You also have the option to make any of the combinations inactive.

Construction Stage combination (Eurocode)

A construction stage load combination is only required for the purpose of designing any composite beams within the model. It is distinguished from other combinations by setting its "Class" to **Construction Stage**.

Typically this combination would include a loadcase of type "Slab Wet", (not "Slab Dry"), other loadcases being included in the combination as required.

If you add/remove a loadcase type from this combination - the factors are defaulted as follows:

- Self weight - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- Slab Wet - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- Dead - default Strength factor = 1.35, default Service factor = 1.0
- Imposed - default Strength factor = 1.5, default Service factor = 1.0

NOTE The Slab Wet loadcase type should not be included in any other combination.

Gravity combinations (Eurocode)

These combinations are considered in both the Gravity Sizing and Full Design processes.

They are used in the Gravity Sizing processes as follows:

- Design Concrete (Gravity) - concrete members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations
- Design Steel (Gravity) - steel members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations.
- Design All (Gravity) - all members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations.

They are also used during the Full Design processes as follows:

- Design Concrete (All) - concrete members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations.
- Design Steel (All) - steel members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations.
- Design All (All) - all members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the gravity combinations.

Quasi Permanent SLS Gravity Combination

In order to cater for the quasi-permanent SLS load combination, a gravity combination is permitted to have two SLS sets of factors. The quasi permanent combination is only used for the spacing of reinforcement calculation for RC beams (and nothing else).

Lateral combinations (Eurocode)

These combinations are **not** used in the Gravity Sizing processes.

They are used during the Full Design processes as follows:

- Design Concrete (All) - concrete members in the structure are automatically sized (or checked) for the lateral combinations.
- Design Steel (All) - steel members in the structure which have not been set as Gravity Only are automatically sized (or checked) for the lateral combinations.
- Design All (All) - all concrete members and all steel members which have not been set as Gravity Only are automatically sized (or checked) for the lateral combinations.

Seismic combinations (Eurocode)

NOTE Although included in this documentation, these are only available for use in regions where seismic design is required.

These combinations are only considered during the Full Design process. They are not used in the Gravity Sizing process.

Modal mass combinations (Eurocode)

For modal analysis, you are required to set up specific “modal mass” combinations. Provided these combinations are active they are always run through the modal analysis.

NOTE It is always assumed that all loads in the loadcases in the combination are converted to mass for modal analysis. You are permitted to add lumped mass directly to the model.

Staged Construction combination (Eurocode)

In order to run a staged construction analysis, you are required to set up a specific “staged construction” combination.

You would typically specify the content of this combination as self weight plus an additional construction loading allowance to be applied during each of the construction stages. Two load combination groups are provided; one for the recent stages and one for older stages. You are able to say how many stages are included in the recent stages group.

For both groups you define a combination of loads and factors in the usual way.

1.7 References (Eurocode)

1. **British Standards Institution (25/04/05).** Eurocode 1: Actions on structures - Part 1-4: General actions - Wind actions. BS EN 1991-1-4:2005.
2. **British Standards Institution (September 2008).** UK National Annex to Eurocode 1: Actions on structures. NA to BS EN 1991-1-4:2005.
3. **British Standards Institution.** Background information to the National Annex to BS EN 1991-1-4 and additional guidance. PD 6688 - 1-4:2009.
4. **Cook, N.J.** Designers' Guide to EN 1991-1-4. Euro Code 1 : Actions on Structures, General Actions Part 1-4 : Wind actions. **Thomas Telford, London. ISBN 978-0-7277-3152-4.**
5. **Cook, N.J. (1999).** Wind Loading - a practical guide to BS 6399-2 Wind Loads on buildings. **Thomas Telford, London. ISBN: 0 7277 2755 9.**
6. BREVe software package version 3. **Copyright © 2009 CSC (UK) Ltd; BRE Ltd; Ordnance Survey.**

2 Steel design to EC3 and EC4

Tekla Structural Designer designs steel members and composite members to a range of international codes. This reference guide specifically describes the design methods applied in the software when the BS EN 1993-1-1:2005 (Ref.1) and BS EN 1994-1-1:2004 (Ref. 4) codes are selected.

Within the remainder of this handbook BS EN 1993-1-1:2005 and BS EN 1994-1-1:2004 are referred to as EC3 and EC4 respectively.

Unless explicitly noted otherwise, all clauses, figures and tables referred to are from EC3; apart from the Composite Beam section, within which references are to EC4 unless stated.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Basic principles \(page 71\)](#)
- [Steel beam design \(page 74\)](#)
- [Composite beam design \(page 92\)](#)
- [Steel column design \(page 114\)](#)
- [Column base plate design \(page 123\)](#)
- [Steel brace design \(page 129\)](#)
- [Steel single, double angle and tee section design \(page 130\)](#)

2.1 Basic principles (EC3)

This section covers definitions, convention for members axis and deflection checks.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Definitions \(page 72\)](#)
- [Convention for member axes \(page 73\)](#)
- [Deflection checks \(page 73\)](#)

Definitions (EC3 Eurocode)

The following terms are relevant when using Tekla Structural Designer to design to the Eurocodes.

National Annex (NA)

Safety factors in the Eurocodes are recommended values and may be altered by the national annex of each member state.

Tekla Structural Designer currently has the following EC3 national annex options available:

- EC3 Europe
- EC3 UK NA
- EC3 Ireland NA
- EC3 Ireland NA
- EC3 Malaysia NA
- EC3 Singapore NA

You can select the desired National Annex as appropriate, in which case the nationally determined parameters are automatically applied (see next section), or if you choose EC3 Europe, the Eurocode recommended values are applied.

Nationally Determined Parameters (NDP's)

NDP's are choices of values, classes or alternative methods contained in a National Annex that can be applied in place of the base Eurocode, EC3 Europe.

Partial Factors for Buildings

The partial factors γ_M for buildings as described in clause 6.1(1) Note 2B should be applied to the various characteristic values of resistance as follows:

- resistance of cross-sections irrespective of class: γ_{M0}
- resistance of members to instability assessed by member checks: γ_{M1}
- resistance of cross-sections in tension to fracture: γ_{M2}

Depending on your choice of National Annex the above partial factors for buildings are set as follows:

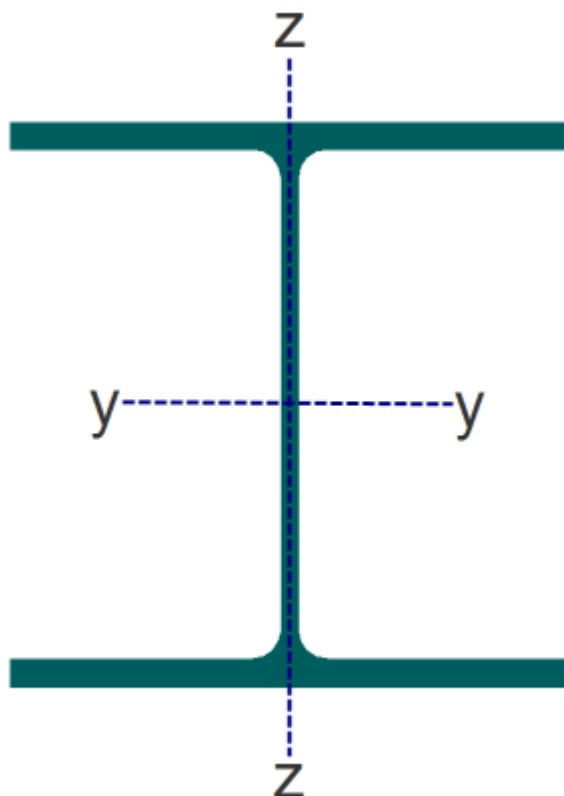
Factor	EC3 Base value	UK	Ireland	Malaysia	Singapore
γ_{M0}	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00
γ_{M1}	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00

Factor	EC3 Base value	UK	Ireland	Malaysia	Singapore
γ_{M2}	1.25	1.10*	1.25	1.20	1.10

NOTE - for connection design BS EN1991-1-8 - $\gamma_{M2} = 1.25$

Convention for member axes (EC3 Eurocode)

The sign convention for member axes when designing to Eurocodes is as shown below.



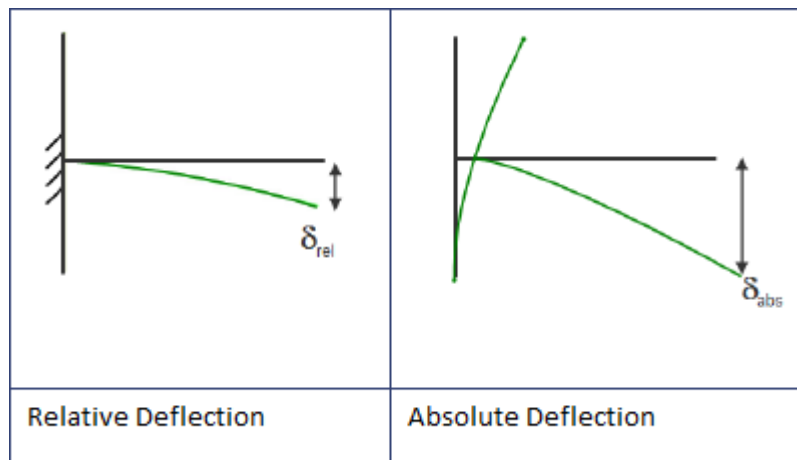
Section axes - (x is into the page along the centroidal axis of the member).

Deflection checks (EC3 Eurocode)

Relative and Absolute Deflections

Tekla Structural Designer calculates both **relative** and **absolute** deflections. Relative deflections measure the internal displacement occurring within the length of the member and take no account of the support settlements or rotations, whereas absolute deflections are concerned with deflection of the structure as a whole. The absolute deflections are the ones displayed in the

structure deflection graphics. The difference between **relative** and **absolute** deflections is illustrated in the cantilever beam example below.



Relative deflections are given in the member analysis results graphics and are the ones used in the member design.

Steel beam deflections

Deflections of steel beams in design are calculated from first order linear results since these are SLS deflections that are compared with standard limits such as span/360. This means that the effects of any non-linearity such as a continuous beam sitting on sinking supports i.e. non-linear springs are not taken into account in design. If these springs are linear this is not an issue.

2.2 Steel beam design to EC3

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Design method \(page 74\)](#)
- [Steel beam limitations and assumptions \(page 75\)](#)
- [Ultimate Limit State - Strength \(page 76\)](#)
- [Ultimate limit state - Buckling \(page 80\)](#)
- [Torsion \(page 86\)](#)
- [Natural frequency checks \(SLS\) \(page 109\)](#)
- [Fire resistance check \(page 87\)](#)
- [Web openings \(page 88\)](#)

Design method (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Unless explicitly stated all calculations are in accordance with the relevant sections of EC3 (Ref. 1) and any associated National Annex. A basic knowledge of the design methods for beams in accordance with the code is assumed.

Steel beam limitations and assumptions (Beam: EC3 Eurocode)

The following limitations apply:

- Continuous beams (more than one span) must be co-linear in the plane of the web within a small tolerance (sloping in elevation is allowed),
- Rolled doubly symmetric prismatic sections (i.e. I- and H-sections), doubly symmetric hollow sections (i.e. SHS, RHS and CHS), and channel sections are fully designed,
- Single angles, double angles and tees are designed, but certain checks are beyond scope, (see Angle and Tee Limitations)
- Plated beams are fully designed provided the section type is either “Plated Beam” or “Plated Column”.
- All other plated section types (“Rolled I Sections with Plates”, “Double Rolled I Sections” etc.) are analyzed only but not designed,
- Fabsec beams (with or without openings) are excluded.

The following assumptions apply:

- All supports are considered to provide torsional restraint, that is lateral restraint to both flanges. This cannot be changed. It is assumed that a beam that is continuous through the web of a supporting beam or column together with its substantial moment resisting end plate connections is able to provide such restraint.
- If, at the support, the beam oversails the supporting beam or column then the detail is assumed to be such that the bottom flange of the beam is well connected to the supporting member and, as a minimum, has torsional stiffeners provided at the support.
- In the Tekla Structural Designer model, when not at supports, coincident restraints to both flanges are assumed when one or more members frame into the web of the beam at a particular position and the cardinal point of the centreline model of the beam lies in the web. Otherwise, only a top flange or bottom flange restraint is assumed. Should you judge the actual restraint provided by the in-coming members to be different from what has been assumed, you have the flexibility to edit the restraints as required.

- Intermediate lateral restraints to the top or bottom flange are assumed to be of sufficient stiffness and also to be of sufficient strength to transfer the restraining forces back to an appropriate system of bracing or suitably rigid part of the structure. For further guidance refer to Section 2.8 in SCI P360. [\(Ref. 14\) \(page 137\)](#)
- It is assumed that you will make a rational and “correct” choice for the effective lengths between restraints for both LTB and compression buckling. **The default value for the effective length factor of 1.0 may be neither correct nor safe.**

Ultimate Limit State - Strength (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

The strength checks relate to a particular point on the member and are carried out at regular intervals along the member and at “points of interest”.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Classification \(page 76\)](#)
- [Shear capacity \(page 77\)](#)
- [Moment capacity \(page 79\)](#)
- [Axial capacity \(page 79\)](#)
- [Combined bending and axial capacity \(page 79\)](#)

Classification (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

General

The classification of the cross section is in accordance with EC3 Cl. 5.5 Table 5.2

A steel non-composite beam can be classified as:

- Plastic Class = 1
- Compact Class = 2
- Semi-compact Class = 3
- Slender Class = 4

Class 4 sections are unacceptable and are either failed in check mode or rejected in design mode.

Implementation of the below clauses is as follows:

- Classification is determined using clause 5.5.2 (6) and not 5.5.2 (7).
- Clause 5.5.2 (9) is not implemented as clause (10) asks for the full classification to be used for buckling resistance.
- Clause 5.5.2 (11) is not implemented.

- Clause 5.5.2 (12) is not implemented.

The note at the end of clause 5.5.2 is not implemented. A brief study by CSC (UK) Ltd of UK rolled UBs and UCs showed that flange induced buckling in normal rolled sections is not a concern. No study was undertaken for plated sections.

Hollow sections

The classification rules for SHS and RHS relate to “hot-finished hollow sections” and “cold-formed hollow sections”.

Shear capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Major and minor axis shear

Checks are performed according to clause 6.2.6 (1) for the absolute value of shear force normal to each axis at the point under consideration. The following points should be noted:

- No account is taken of fastener holes in the flange or web - see 6.2.6 (7)
- Shear is not combined with torsion and thus the resistance is not reduced as per 6.2.6 (8)

Web Shear buckling

Shear web buckling design applies to rolled and plated I/H sections only.

National Annex dependency

Plates with unstiffened webs are checked for shear web buckling where:

$$h_w / t_w > 72 \varepsilon / \eta$$

where

$$\varepsilon = \sqrt{235 / f_w}$$

η is NA dependant and is defined in the table below:

National Annex	η	Applicable to
Eurocode value	1.20	Up to and including S460, else use $\eta = 1.00$
UK	1.00	All steel grades
Irish	1.00	All steel grades
Malaysia	1.00	All steel grades
Singapore	1.00	All steel grades

Contribution from flanges

When the flange resistance is not fully utilized in resisting the bending moment ($M_{Ed} < M_{f,Rd}$), the contribution from the flanges is taken as:

$$V_{bf,Rd} = (b_f t_f^2 f_{yf}) / (c \gamma_{M1}) * (1 - (M_{Ed}/M_{f,Rd})^2)$$

where

- b_f and t_f are taken for the flange which provides the least axial resistance
- b_f is not taken as larger than $15\epsilon t_f$ on each side of the web
- $M_{f,Rd}$ is the moment of resistance of the cross section consisting of the effective area of the flanges only
- $c = a (0.25 + 1.6 b_f t_f^2 f_{yf} / t h_w^2 f_{yw})$
- a is the distance between stiffeners

As we are only designing for the case where no stiffeners are being used, $a \rightarrow \infty$ therefore $c \rightarrow \infty$ so $V_{bf,Rd} \rightarrow 0$.

Contribution from the web

The contribution from the web is taken as:

$$V_{bw,Rd} = (x_w f_{yw} h_w t) / (\sqrt{3} \gamma_{M1})$$

$$x_w \leq \eta$$

Design resistance

The design resistance for shear is taken as:

$$V_{b,Rd} = V_{bw,Rd} + V_{bf,Rd} \leq \eta (f_{yw} h_w t) / (\sqrt{3} \gamma_{M1})$$

Influence of shear

According to 7.1 of EN 1993-1-5 provided $V_{Ed} \leq 0.5 V_{bw,Rd}$ the design resistance to bending moment and axial force does not need to be reduced to allow for shear force.

In Tekla Structural Designer V_{Ed} is restricted to $0.5 V_{bw,Rd}$, values above this are deemed beyond scope.

This restriction is only applicable if $h_w / t_w > 72 \epsilon / \eta$

Assumptions

The following points should be noted:

- Non-rigid end post is a more conservative approach than a rigid end post.
- Physical support conditions can be taken as equivalent to "transverse stiffeners at supports only".
- It is assumed there is negligible contribution to the design shear force V_{Ed} from shear from torque
- All hole cut outs are small in accordance to section EN 1993-1-5:2006 2.3
- As the case being designed for is where no stiffeners are being used, $a \rightarrow \infty$ therefore $c \rightarrow \infty$ so $V_{bf,Rd} \rightarrow 0$.

- If a grade of steel is used other than S335, S355 and S460, η will be taken as 1.00 regardless of National Annex.

Moment capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Major and minor axis bending checks are performed in accordance with Section 6.2.5.

Major axis bending

For the low shear case the calculation uses equation 6.13 for class 1 and 2 cross sections and equation 6.14 for class 3 cross sections. In the high shear case equation 6.29 is used for class 1 and 2 cross sections and equation 6.14 for class 3 cross sections. Where the high shear condition applies, the moment capacity calculation is made less complicated by conservatively adopting a simplified shear area.

Minor axis bending

For the low shear case the calculation uses equation 6.13 for class 1 and 2 cross sections and equation 6.14 for class 3 cross sections. High shear in the minor axis is beyond the current program scope.

NOTE Fastener holes in the flange or web are not accounted for in the calculations.

Axial capacity (Beam: EC3 Eurocode)

Axial Tension

Checks are performed according to equation 6.5

Implementation of the below clauses is as follows:

- Clause 6.2.3 (3) - is not considered
Clause 6.2.3 (4) - is not considered
- Clause 6.2.3 (5) - is not considered
- Eqn 6.7 is not considered for steel non-composite beams.

Axial Compression

Checks are performed according to equation 6.9.

Combined bending and axial capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

The combined bending and axial capacity check covers the interaction of axial load and bending to Clause 6.2.9 appropriate to the type (for example - doubly

symmetric) and classification of the section, and provided there is no high shear present.

If high shear is present only on the major axis (i.e. parallel to the web) of a doubly symmetric rolled or plated I section, in combination with uniaxial major bending and axial compression or tension, then the combined bending and axial capacity check will be carried out to the EC3 design rules described in a research paper by Goczek and Supel.¹

All other high shear conditions, including the presence of shear web buckling or class 4 sections, are given a Beyond Scope status.

Class 1 and 2 cross sections (with low shear)

Equation 6.41 is applied. Note that in these calculations the combined effects of axial load and bending are assessed - clause 6.2.9 (4) is not considered.

Also note that the current "reduced plastic moduli" approach that is used in the published tables is adopted and not the approximate method given in clause 6.2.9.1(5). The latter is less conservative than the current approach at low levels of 'n'.

Class 3 cross sections (with low shear)

Equation 6.42 is applied.

¹ 'Resistance of steel cross-sections subjected to bending, shear and axial forces' by Jerzy Goczek and Lukasz Supel, *Engineering Structures* 70 (2014) 271-277, Elsevier.

Ultimate limit state - Buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

NOTE Classification for buckling checks - For rolled I sections, RHS and SHS classification varies along the member length due to the section forces changing along the member length - for combined buckling, the worst classification of the whole member should be used. In theory it should be the worst classification in the "check length" considered for buckling. However, the "check lengths" for lateral torsional buckling, minor axis strut buckling and major axis strut buckling can all be different. It is simpler and conservative therefore to use the worst classification in the entire member length.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Compression buckling \(page 80\)](#)
- [Lateral torsional buckling \(page 82\)](#)
- [Combined buckling \(page 83\)](#)
- [Design control \(page 84\)](#)

Compression buckling (Beams: EC3)

Beams must be checked to ensure adequate resistance to buckling about both the major and minor axes and they must also be checked in the torsional mode over an associated buckling length. Since the axial force can vary throughout the beam and the buckling lengths in the two planes do not necessarily coincide, all buckling modes must be checked. There may be circumstances where it would not be safe to assume that the combined buckling check will always govern (see below).

NOTE A warning message will be given in the compression buckling check results whenever (major or minor axis) high shear is present in a load combination. *"High shear is assumed not to affect buckling design. This assumption should be verified by the Engineer."*

Effective lengths

In all cases Tekla Structural Designer sets the default effective length to 1.0L, it does not attempt to adjust the effective length in any way. Different values can apply in the major and minor axis. It is your responsibility to adjust the value from 1.0 where you believe it to be justified.

NOTE It is assumed that you will make a rational and "correct" choice for the effective lengths between restraints. The default value for the effective length factor of 1.0L may be neither correct nor safe.

Coincident restraint points in the major and minor axis define the 'check length' for torsional and torsional flexural buckling (which also has an effective length factor but is assumed to be 1.0L and cannot be changed).

All intermediate major and minor restraints in a cantilever span are ignored.

Any major or minor strut buckling 'check length' can take the type 'Continuous' to indicate that it is continuously restrained over that length. There is no facility for specifying torsional or torsional flexural buckling 'check lengths' as 'Continuous'.

There is no guidance in EC3 on the values to be used for effective length factors for beam-columns.

There is no guidance in EC3 on the values to be used for effective length factors for beam-columns.

Compression resistance

The relevant buckling resistances are calculated from Equation 6.47.

These consist of the flexural buckling resistance about both the major and minor axis i.e. $N_{b,y,Rd}$ and $N_{b,z,Rd}$ over the buckling lengths L_{yy} and L_{zz} and where required the buckling resistance in the torsional or flexural-torsional modes, $N_{b,x,Rd}$.

The elastic critical buckling load, N_{cr} for flexural buckling about major and minor axes is taken from standard texts. The elastic critical buckling loads for torsional, $N_{cr,T}$ and for torsional flexural buckling, $N_{cr,TF}$ are taken from the NCCI "Critical axial load for torsional and torsional flexural buckling modes" available free to download at www.steel-ncci.co.uk.

All section types are checked for flexural buckling. It is only hollow sections that do not need to be checked for torsional and torsional-flexural buckling.

Lateral torsional buckling (Beams: EC3)

Lateral torsional buckling checks are required between supports, or LTB restraints on a flange which is in bending compression, for all lengths that are not continuously restrained.

NOTE A warning message will be given in the lateral torsional buckling check results whenever (major or minor axis) high shear is present in a load combination. *"High shear is assumed not to affect buckling design. This assumption should be verified by the Engineer."*

Note that **coincident** LTB restraints (i.e. top & bottom flange) are the equivalent of a support and will define one end of a 'check length' for both flanges regardless of whether a particular flange is in compression or tension at the coincident restraint position. However, note also that in a cantilever all intermediate restraints are ignored.

Tekla Structural Designer allows you to 'switch off' LTB checks for either or both flanges by specifying that the entire length between start and end of the beam span is continuously restrained against lateral torsional buckling. If you use this option you must be able to provide justification that the beam is adequately restrained against lateral torsional buckling.

All intermediate LTB restraints in a cantilever span are ignored.

When the checks are required you can set the effective LTB length of each 'check length' by giving factors to apply to the physical length of the beam. Any individual 'check length' less than the full span length can be continuously restrained in which case no LTB check will be carried out for that 'check length' provided all segments of the 'check length' have been marked as Continuous. Each 'check length' which is not defined as being continuously restrained for its **whole length** is checked in accordance with clause 6.3.2.3.

The formula for elastic critical buckling moment, M_{cr} is taken from standard texts. The moment factor C_1 that is part of the standard formula has been derived analytically.

LTB does not need to be checked for the following sections:

- circular and square hollow sections,
- equal and unequal flanged I/H sections loaded in the minor axis only.

Effective lengths

The value of effective length factor is entirely the choice of the engineer. The default value is 1.0. There is no specific factor for destabilizing loads - so you will have to adjust the 'normal' effective length factor to allow for such effects.

Combined buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Combined buckling in Tekla Structural Designer is limited to doubly symmetric sections (I, H, CHS, SHS, RHS). In the context of combined buckling, beams are assumed to be dominated by moment with axial force.

NOTE A warning message will be given in the combined buckling check results whenever (major or minor axis) high shear is present in a load combination. *"High shear is assumed not to affect buckling design. This assumption should be verified by the Engineer."*

Restraints are treated as described previously and summarized as follows:

- Each span is assumed to be fully supported at its ends (i.e LTB, y-y and z-z restraint) - this cannot be changed.
- Tension flange LTB restraints are ignored unless they are coincident (see next point).
- Coincident top and bottom flange restraints are considered as 'torsional' restraints i.e. as good as the supports.
- All intermediate LTB and strut restraints in a cantilever span are ignored.

For each span of the beam, the design process is driven from the standpoint of the individual LTB lengths i.e. the LTB lengths and the y-y lengths that are associated with each LTB length and the z-z lengths associated with the y-y length. Thus a 'hierarchy' is formed - see the ["Design Control \(page 84\)"](#) section below for details. Both Equation 6.61 and Equation 6.62 are evaluated recognizing that the combined buckling check is carried out for both the top flange and the bottom flange.

Effective lengths

In all cases Tekla Structural Designer sets the default effective length to 1.0L, it does not attempt to adjust the effective length in any way. Different values can apply in the major and minor axis. It is your responsibility to adjust the value from 1.0 where you believe it to be justified.

NOTE It is assumed that you will make a rational and "correct" choice for the effective lengths between restraints. The default value for the effective length factor of 1.0L may be neither correct nor safe.

Combined buckling resistance

Equations 6.61 and 6.62 are used to determine the combined buckling resistance.

With regard to these equations the following should be noted:

- The “k” factors used in these equations are determined from Annex B only, and reported as follows:
- k_{yy} is reported as components k'_{yy} and C_{my} where k'_{yy} is simply the Annex B term for k_{yy} with C_{my} **excluded**
- k_{yz} is reported as k'_{yz} , a multiple of k'_{zz} (see below)
- k_{zy} is reported as k'_{zy} , a multiple of k'_{yy} (see above), but only for members not susceptible to torsional deformations (i.e. SHS and CHS sections at all times, and I or H sections which have both flanges continuously restrained for LTB). For members which are susceptible to torsional deformations k_{zy} is reported per Table B.2 (i.e. with C_{mLT} **included**)
- $k_{zy,LT1}$ is a factor reported for columns only and is the Table B.2 term for k_{zy} with C_{mLT} set to 1.0
- k_{zz} is reported as components k'_{zz} and C_{mz} where k'_{zz} is simply the Annex B term for k_{zz} with C_{mz} excluded.
- The note to Table B.3 that C_m should be limited to 0.9 is not applied.

WARNING Danger. Equations 6.61 and 6.62 are limited to doubly symmetric sections and do not consider torsional or torsional flexural buckling. **Should either of these buckling modes govern the compression buckling check, you should consider very carefully whether the calculations provided by Tekla Structural Designer for combined buckling can be considered valid.**

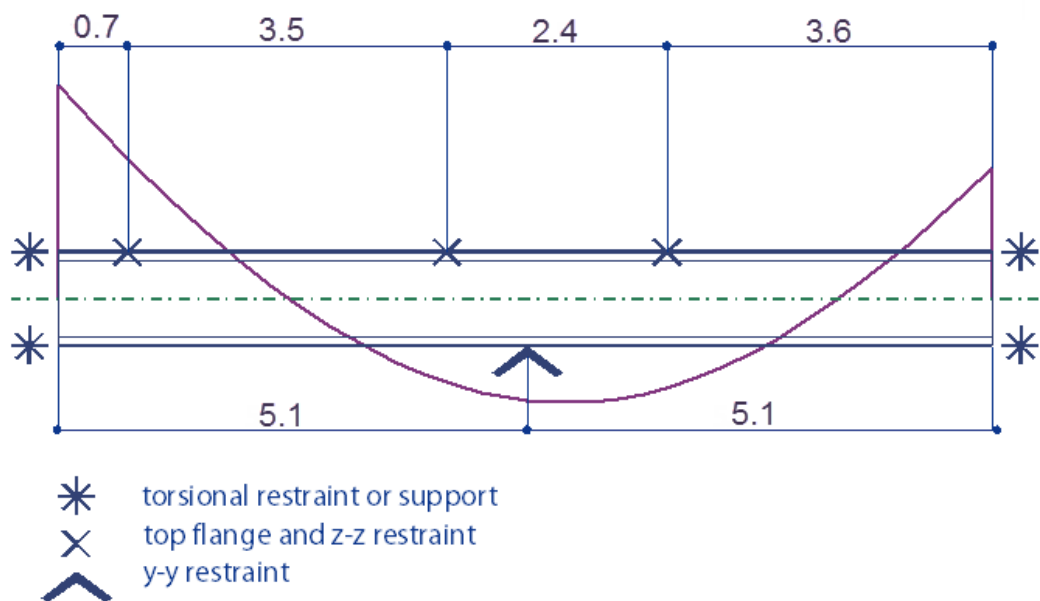
Design control (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Principles

There are multiple check lengths to deal with (LTB, y-y buckling and z-z buckling) all of which can be contained within or overlapped by their associated lengths. Consequently, a 'hierarchy' of checks is defined. In the approach taken the LTB segment length is taken as the driver and the other lengths whether overlapping or contained by this segment are mapped to it.

Design example

The following example illustrates how the checks are applied to I- and H-sections with equal flanges.



The beam (span) is 10.2 m long and has torsional restraints at each end. The top flange is restrained out-of-plane at 0.7m, 4.2m and 6.6 m – these provide restraint to the top flange for LTB and to the beam as a whole for out-of-plane strut buckling. The bottom flange has one restraint at mid-span and this restrains the bottom flange for LTB and the beam as a whole for in-plane strut buckling. (This is probably difficult to achieve in practice but is useful for illustration purposes.)

Note that the top flange LTB restraints and z-z restraints are coincident in this example but will not always be coincident.

Tekla Structural Designer identifies the following lengths and checks. (in this example all the effective length factors are assumed to be 1.0 for simplicity.)

LTB Segment	Equation	In-plane strut segment	Out-of-plane strut segment
length (m)		length (m)	length (m)
Top flange 0 – 4.2 (first restraint ignored since top flange is in tension at this point)	6.61	0 – 5.1	0 – 0.7
	6.62	0 – 5.1	0 – 0.7
	6.61	0 – 5.1	0.7- 4.2
	6.62	0 – 5.1	0.7- 4.2
Top flange 4.2 – 6.6	6.61	0 – 5.1	4.2 – 6.6
	6.62	0 – 5.1	4.2 – 6.6
	6.61	5.1 – 10.2	4.2 – 6.6
	6.62	5.1 – 10.2	4.2 – 6.6

LTB Segment	Equation	In-plane strut segment	Out-of-plane strut segment
Top flange 6.6 - 10.2	6.61	5.1 - 10.2	6.6 - 10.2
	6.62	5.1 - 10.2	6.6 - 10.2
Bottom flange 0 - 10.2	6.61	0 - 5.1	0 - 0.7
	6.62	0 - 5.1	0 - 0.7
	6.61	0 - 5.1	0.7 - 4.2
	6.62	0 - 5.1	0.7 - 4.2
	6.61	0 - 5.1	4.2 - 6.6
	6.62	0 - 5.1	4.2 - 6.6
	6.61	5.1 - 10.2	4.2 - 6.6
	6.62	5.1 - 10.2	4.2 - 6.6
	6.61	5.1 - 10.2	6.6 - 10.2
	6.62	5.1 - 10.2	6.6 - 10.2

Torsion (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Torsion design is carried out on request according to SCI P385, but only for single span, pin ended steel and cold formed beams with open and closed section types.

Open sections (I- symmetric rolled)

A torsion design and an angle rotation check can be carried out for applied torsion forces only.

The following should be noted with regard to the torsion design:

- Axial force is not taken into account
- It is assumed that load is applied at the shear center. The effect of stabilizing/destabilizing loads is not considered.

Closed sections (HSS only)

An angle of rotation check can be carried out for applied forces only.

Angle of rotation check

The angle of rotation check is optionally carried out based on the applied torsion loading only.

The check is applied by selecting "Apply rotation limit" (located in the steel beam properties under the Torsion heading). The default limit is also set in the steel beam properties as 2° but can be adjusted to suit.

Fire resistance check (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

Scope

This check determines the mechanical resistance of a steel beam subjected to major axis bending in case of fire during the required time of exposure in accordance with EN 1993 & national annex for the UK, Ireland, Singapore, Malaysia, Sweden, Norway, Finland or the recommended Eurocode values.

The check can be applied to non-composite, rolled steel beams (for all end fixity conditions), which:

- may be unprotected (bare steel) or protected,
- may be exposed on 3 (under a slab) or 4 sides.

The check is applied for gravity load combinations only.

Temperature domain verification uses the **Critical temperature method** as described in EN 1993-1-2, Cl 4.2.4

Limitations and assumptions

The following limitations and assumptions apply:

- The calculation is limited to a restrained single-span beam in bending.
 - While you are not prevented from performing the check on an unrestrained beam, if you do so a warning is issued to indicate that the beam is considered fully restrained under the fire condition.
- The check cannot be applied to beams with web openings.
- As per EN 1993-1-2, Cl 4.1(3) simple calculation models are simplified design methods for individual members, which are based on conservative assumptions.
- According to EN 1991-1-2 Cl.3.1 (10) the standard temperature-time curve is used to calculate gas temperature –curve as described in EN 1991-1-2 Cl.3.2.1.
- The calculation considers that shear buckling resistance according to section 5 of EN1993-1 can be ignored so it doesn't check it as per cl.6.2.6(6) EN 1993-1-1.
- A conservative approach has been taken regarding the fire moment resistance of the steel beam at time t so it's limited to the ultimate moment capacity of the beam.
- The effects of indirect actions are not considered. These actions, such as internal forces and moments induced in the structure by deformations and restrained thermal expansion, do not need to be considered when the fire safety is based on the standard –temperature time curve.
- The shadow effect caused by local shielding is not taken into account, therefore the shadow effect factor is conservatively taken as 1.

- For Malaysia & Ireland check is as per UK NA.
- Fire protection properties (self weight of fire protection material) are not considered for loading and analysis.

Web openings (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)

NOTE When the regional code has been set to Eurocode, Tekla Structural Designer adopts the approach to web openings which is specific to the UK National Annex.

Guidance on size and positioning of web openings to EC3

As each web opening is added it is checked against certain geometric and proximity recommendations taken from Table 2.1 Section 2.6 of SCI Publication P355.

NOTE These geometric limits should normally be observed when providing openings in the webs of beams. It should be noted that these limits relate specifically to composite beams and caution should be used in applying these limits to non-composite beams.

Parameter	Limit	
	Circular Opening	Rectangular Opening
Max. depth of opening:	$\leq 0.8h$	$\leq 0.7h$
Min. depth of Tee,	$\geq t_f + 30 \text{ mm}$	$\geq 0.1h$
Min. depth of Top Tee:	As above	As above and $\geq 0.1 I_o$ if unstiffened
Max. ratio of depth of Tees: h_b/h_t	≤ 3 ≥ 0.5	≤ 2 ≥ 1
Max. unstiffened opening length, l_o	-	$\leq 1.5 h_o$ high shear*
Max. stiffened opening length, l_o	-	$\leq 2.5 h_o$ low shear
	-	$\leq 2.5 h_o$ high shear*
	-	$\leq 4 h_o$ low shear
Min. width of web post:	$\geq 0.3h_o$	$\geq 0.5 I_o$
- Low shear regions	$\geq 0.4h_o$	$\geq I_o$
- High shear regions		

Parameter	Limit	
	Circular Opening	Rectangular Opening
Corner radius of rectangular openings:	-	$r_o \geq 2 t_w$ but $r_o \geq 15 \text{ mm}$
Min. width of end post, s_e :	$\geq 0.5 h_o$	$\geq l_o$ and $\geq h$
Min. horizontal distance to point load: - no stiffeners - with stiffeners	$\geq 0.5 h$ $\geq 0.25 h_o$	$\geq h$ $\geq 0.5 h_o$

* A high shear region is where the design shear force is greater than half the maximum value of design shear force acting on the beam.

Symbols used in the above table:

h = overall depth of steel section

h_o = depth of opening [diameter for circular openings]

h_t = overall depth of upper Tee [including flange]

h_b = overall depth of lower Tee [including flange]

l_o = (clear) length of opening [diameter for circular openings]

s_e = width of end post [minimum clear distance between opening and support]

t_f = thickness of flange

t_w = thickness of web

r_o = corner radius of opening

In addition, the following fundamental geometric requirements must be satisfied.

$d_o \leq 0.8 \cdot h$ for circular openings

$d_o \leq 0.7 \cdot h$ for rectangular openings

$d_o < 2 \cdot (d_{oc} - t_t - r_t)$

$d_o < 2 \cdot (h - d_{oc} - t_b - r_b)$

$d_2 < d_{oc} - d_o/2 - t_t - t_s/2$

$d_2 < h - t_b - d_{oc} - d_o - t_s/2$

$l_o < 2 \cdot L_c$

$l_o < 2 \cdot (L - L_c)$

$L_s < 2 \cdot L_c$

$$L_s < 2 * (L - L_c)$$

where

d_t = the depth of the web of the upper tee section measured from the underside of the top flange

d_{oc} = the distance to the centre line of the opening from the top of the steel section

d_2 = the distance from the edge of the opening to the centre line of the stiffener

t_s = thickness of stiffener [constrained to be the same top and bottom]

t_t = the thickness of the top flange of the steel section

t_b = the thickness of the bottom flange of the steel section

r_t = root radius at the top of the steel section

r_b = root radius at the bottom of the steel section

L_c = the distance to the centre line of the opening from the left hand support

L = the span of the beam

NOTE Dimensional checks - The program does not check that openings are positioned in the best position (between 1/5 and 1/3 length for udl's and in a low shear zone for point loads). This is because for anything other than simple loading the best position becomes a question of engineering judgment or is pre-defined by the service runs.

NOTE Adjustment to deflections - The calculated deflections are adjusted to allow for the web openings

Circular openings as an equivalent rectangle

Each circular opening is replaced by equivalent rectangular opening, the dimensions of this equivalent rectangle for use in all subsequent calculations are:

- $d_o' = 0.9 * \text{opening diameter}$
- $l_o = 0.45 * \text{opening diameter}$

Properties of tee sections

When web openings have been added, the properties of the tee sections above and below each opening are calculated in accordance with Section 3.3.1 of SCI P355 (Ref. 8) and Appendix B of the joint CIRIA/SCI Publication P068 (Ref. 9). The bending moment resistance is calculated separately for each of the four corners of each opening.

Design

The following calculations are performed where required for web openings:

- Axial resistance of tee sections
- Classification of section at opening
- Vertical shear resistance
- Vierendeel bending resistance
- Web post horizontal shear resistance
- Web post bending resistance
- Web post buckling resistance
- Lateral torsional buckling
- Deflections

Deflections

For both non-composite and composite beams without openings the deflection analysis includes the effect of shear. For composite beams this is conservative because it uses the shear area and shear modulus of the bare beam.

The deflection of a beam with web openings *should** be greater than that of the same beam without openings due to two effects,

- the reduction in the beam inertia at the positions of openings due to primary bending of the beam,
- the local deformations at the openings due to Vierendeel effects. This has two components - that due to shear deformation and that due to local bending of the upper and lower tee sections at the opening.

The primary bending deflection is established by 'discretising' the member and using a numerical integration technique based on 'Engineer's Bending Theory' - $M/I = E/R = \sigma/y$. In this way the discrete elements that incorporate all or part of an opening will contribute more to the total deflection.

The component of deflection due to the local deformations around the opening is established using a similar process to that used for cellular beams which is in turn based on the method for castellated beams given in the SCI publication, "Design of castellated beams. For use with BS 5950 and BS 449".

The method works by applying a 'unit point load' at the position where the deflection is required and using a 'virtual work technique to estimate the deflection at that position.

For each opening, the deflection due to shear deformation, δ_s , and that due to local bending, δ_{bt} , is calculated for the upper and lower tee sections at the opening. These are summed for all openings and added to the result at the desired position from the numerical integration of primary bending deflection.

Note that in the original source document on castellated sections, there are two additional components to the deflection. These are due to bending and shear deformation of the web post. For castellated beams and cellular beams where the openings are very close together these effects are important and can be significant. For normal beams the openings are likely to be placed a reasonable distance apart. Thus in many cases these two effects will not be significant. They are not calculated for such beams but in the event that the openings are placed close together a warning is given.

* The above technique for calculating the deflection of a beam with web openings does NOT include shear deflection due to the primary bending. Consequently, if the shear deflection component is more significant than that due to openings, it is possible that the reported deflection for a beam with web openings is less than that reported for the same beam without openings.

2.3 Composite beam design to EC4

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Design method \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 92\)](#)
- [Overview \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 93\)](#)
- [Profiled metal decking \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 94\)](#)
- [Stud connector strength \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 95\)](#)
- [Application of NCCI PN002 to Partial Shear Connection \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 95\)](#)
- [Concrete haunch width \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 96\)](#)
- [Concrete slab \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 98\)](#)
- [Precast concrete planks \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 99\)](#)
- [Construction Stage design \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 99\)](#)
- [Composite stage design \(Composite beam: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 101\)](#)
- [Web openings \(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode\) \(page 109\)](#)

Design method (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

The construction stage calculations are performed in accordance with the relevant sections of EC3 (Ref. 1) and the associated UK (Ref. 2) or Irish (Ref. 3) National Annex.

The composite stage design adopts a limit state approach consistent with the design parameters for simple and continuous composite beams as specified in EC4 (Ref. 4) and the associated UK (Ref. 5) or Irish National Annex.

Unless explicitly noted otherwise, all clauses, figures and tables referred to are from EC4.

A basic knowledge of EC3 and the design methods for composite beams in EC4 is assumed.

Overview (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Construction Stage design checks (Composite beams: EC4)

When you design or check a beam for the construction stage (the beam is acting alone before composite action is achieved) the following conditions are examined in accordance with EC3:

- section classification (EC3 Table 5.2),
- major axis shear capacity (EC3 clause 6.2.6 (1)),
- web shear buckling (EC3 clause 6.2.6 (6)),
- moment capacity:
 - EC3 Equation 6.13 for the low shear condition,
 - EC3 Equation 6.29 for the high shear condition,
- lateral torsional buckling resistance (EC3 clause 6.3.2.3),

NOTE This condition is only checked in those cases where the profile decking does not provide adequate restraint to the beam.

- construction stage total load deflection check.

Composite stage design checks

When you design or check a beam for the composite stage (the beam and concrete act together, with shear interaction being achieved by appropriate shear connectors) the following Ultimate limit state and Serviceability limit state conditions are examined in accordance with EC4, unless specifically noted otherwise.

Ultimate limit state checks

- section classification - the classification system defined in EC3 clause 5.5.2 applies to cross-sections of composite beams,
- vertical shear capacity in accordance with EC3 clause 6.2.6,

- longitudinal shear capacity allowing for the profiled metal decking, transverse reinforcement and other reinforcement which has been defined,
- number of shear connectors required (EC4 clause 6.6.1.3 (5)) between the point of maximum moment and the end of the beam, or from and between the positions of significant point loads,
- moment capacity,
- web openings.

Serviceability limit state checks

- service stresses - although there is no requirement to check these in EC4 for buildings (EC4 clause 7.2.2), concrete and steel top/bottom flange stresses are calculated but only reported if the stress limit is exceeded.
- deflections,
 - self-weight,
 - SLAB loadcase,
 - dead load,
 - imposed load,
 - total deflections,
- natural frequency check.

Profiled metal decking (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

You may define the profiled metal decking to span at any angle between 0° (parallel) and 90° (perpendicular) to the direction of span of the steel beam. You can also specify the attachment of the decking for parallel, perpendicular and angled conditions.

Where you specify that the direction of span of the profiled metal decking to that of the steel beam is $\geq 45^\circ$, then Tekla Structural Designer assumes it is not necessary to check the beam for lateral torsional buckling during construction stage.

Where you specify that the direction of span of the profiled metal decking to that of the steel beam is $< 45^\circ$, then you are given the opportunity to check the steel beam for lateral torsional buckling at the construction stage.

NOTE This check is not mandatory in all instances. For a particular profile, gauge and fixing condition etc. you might be able to prove that the profiled metal decking is able to provide a sufficient restraining action to the steel beam until the concrete hardens. If this is so, then you can specify that the whole beam (or a part of it) is continuously restrained. Where you request to check the beam for lateral torsional buckling

during the construction stage then this is carried out in accordance with the requirements of EC3.

Where you specify that the direction of span of the profiled metal decking and that of the steel beam are parallel, you again have the same opportunity to either check the steel beam for lateral torsional buckling at the construction stage, or to set it as continuously restrained.

Stud connector strength (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

The following studs are offered from the materials database:

- 19mm diameter studs with 100, 125, and 150mm nominal height (95, 120 and 145mm as welded height).
- 22mm diameter studs are also offered with 125 and 150 nominal height. These can only be used for precast plank decks and profiled metal decks with closed ends. (e.g. Sigmat).

Stud strength - the design strength of the shear connectors in steel composite floor construction is generally reduced - via a reduction factor - to account for the influence of the deck geometry. The code of practice gives equations for these factors for standard decking, so they are not exposed for editing. However for deck types with closed ends (e.g. Sigmat decking) - given their height and discontinuity over the supporting beams - it is not clear that the code equations apply. Hence - in the absence of other specific guidance - it is necessary to input user-defined reduction factor values when using closed ends decking. (range from 0+ to 1).

- Stud reduction factor for parallel sheeting
- Stud reduction factor for perpendicular sheeting

Application of NCCI PN002 to Partial Shear Connection (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

An **Apply NCCI PN002** checkbox is available on the Stud strength page of the Beam Properties. When this option is selected Tekla Structural Designer calculates partial shear limits described in PN002 for edge beams and SCI P405 for internal beams.

It should be noted that to obtain the benefits of this NCCI,

- for all deck types and orientation the design live load ($\gamma_q q_k$) is limited to 9 kN/m²

- for all deck types and orientation the beam should be “unpropped” at the construction stage (this is a general assumption in Tekla Structural Designer for all composite beams).
- for perpendicular trapezoidal decks the studs should be placed on the “favorable” side or in the central position.
- for perpendicular trapezoidal decks the reinforcement is assumed to be above the head of the stud. Consequently, a reduction is made to the stud resistance in accordance with NCCI PN001.
- for limits of maximum longitudinal stud spacing the relevant NCCI must be satisfied.
- for slab the nominal total depth must not exceed 180mm (depth of concrete over the decking must not exceed 100mm)
- for all deck profiles the nominal height (to shoulder) must not exceed 80mm (applies to SCI P405 only)

It is the user's responsibility to ensure compliance with the above since the program makes no check on these items.

For perpendicular trapezoidal decks the reduction in stud resistance to which point 4 above refers, will be conservative if the reinforcement is placed in a more favorable (lower) position. Even though the NCCI is relevant to the UK this option is also available for all Eurocode region codes in Tekla Structural Designer.

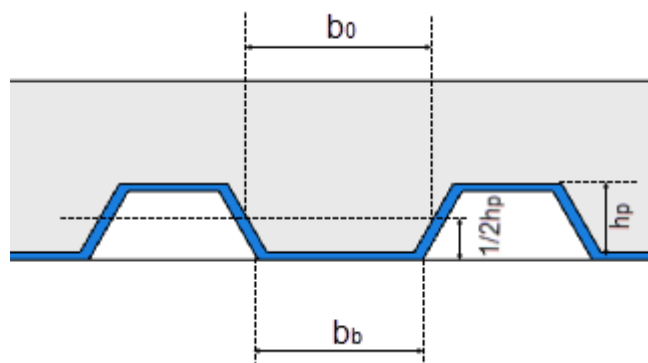
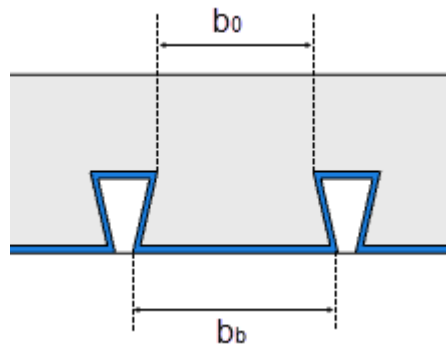
NCCI is not applicable where studs are “Shop welded” for Closed Ends decking.

More information is given in the PN001, PN002 and SCI P405 on www.steel-ncci.co.uk and on <http://www.steelbiz.org/>

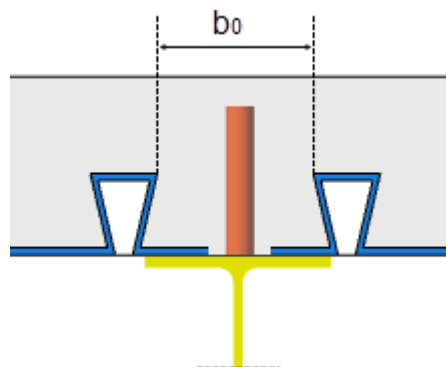
Concrete haunch width (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

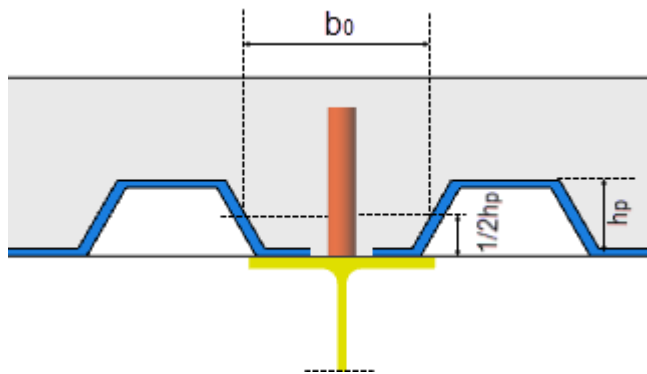
The concrete haunch (i.e. the concrete within the trough adjacent to the stud) plays a major role in the interaction with the shear connectors. It's shape will depend on whether the decking is trapezoidal or re-entrant.

In Tekla Structural Designer, when decking ribs are parallel to the beam, by default it is assumed that the decking is continuous and the studs are site welded. As a result the haunch width b_0 is automatically calculated from the re-entrant or trapezoidal decking profile per EN 1994-1-1:2004 Figure 9.2 as shown below:



If the studs are shop welded, so the decking has to stop and start, you are allowed to increase the haunch width as per EN 1994-1-1:2004 clause 6.6.4.1.





For parallel decks this increased b_0 dimension gives a significantly increased shear stud capacity, which is beneficial for achieving the required minimum shear interaction.

The haunch width can only be set for a beam as above provided the decking spans parallel. It can then be specified in the beam properties as follows:

1. Under 'Floor construction', set the 'Welding condition' to 'Shop welded'.
The effect of this is to set the decking to be discontinuous over the supporting beam.
2. Under 'Metal deck', set the 'Haunch width above beam for parallel decking, b_0 ' to the width required.

The default b_0 is the deck trough width as defined in the program's metal decking database.

The valid input range is:

- Minimum value of $1 \times \text{stud diameter}$
- Maximum value of $\text{MIN}[2 \times b_f, b_f + b_2]$ for re-entrant decking
- Maximum value of $\text{MIN}[2 \times b_f, b_f + b_1]$ for trapezoidal decking

Where, b_f is the composite beam flange breadth, and b_1 and b_2 are the maximum width of rib values given in the decking properties.

Concrete slab (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

You can define concrete slabs in both normal and lightweight concrete.

Warnings are issued in the design if you do not comply with the following constraints:

- Normal weight concrete range C20/25 - C60/75 - See EN 1994-1-1:2004 Clause 3.1(2),

- Lightweight concrete range LC20/22 - LC60/66 - See EN 1994-1-1:2004 Clause 3.1(2),
- Minimum density for lightweight concrete 1750 kg/m³ - see EN 1994-1-1:2004 Clause 6.6.3.1(1).

Precast concrete planks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

The design of composite beams with precast concrete planks is carried out in accordance with the guidance given in SCI P401. The design basis in P401 is, in general, in accordance with Eurocode 4, supplemented by NCCI derived test data where applicable.

As the implications of applying NCCI PN002 or SCI P405 to composite beams with PC planks have not been considered in the first release, only pure EC design will be carried out regardless of whether **apply NCCI PN002** is selected or not.

Where a choice has been made the condition of the most common application has been taken: shop welded, hollow core unit with partial interaction.

Construction Stage design (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

All checks are performed for this condition in accordance with EC3.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Section classification \(page 99\)](#)
- [Member strength checks \(page 100\)](#)
- [Lateral torsional buckling check \(page 100\)s](#)
- [Deflection checks \(page 101\)](#)

Section classification (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Cross-section classification is determined using EC3 Table 5.2.

At construction stage the classification of the section must be Class 1, Class 2 or Class 3.

Sections which are classified as Class 4 are beyond scope.

NOTE Clause 5.5.2 (6) is implemented, not the alternative 5.5.2 (7).

Clause 5.5.2 (11) is not implemented.

Clause 5.5.2 (12) is not implemented.

Member strength checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Member strength checks are performed at the point of maximum moment, the point of maximum shear, the position of application of each point load, and at all other “points of interest” along the beam.

Shear capacity

Shear capacity is determined in accordance with EC3 clause 6.2.6 (1). Where the applied shear force exceeds 50% of the capacity of the section, the high shear condition applies to the bending moment capacity checks (see below).

The following points should be noted:

- No account is taken of fastener holes in the flange or web - see EC3 6.2.6 (7)
- Shear is not combined with torsion and thus the resistance is not reduced as per EC3 6.2.6(8)

Web Shear buckling

See: Steel Beam Design to EC3 - Web shear buckling

Bending moment capacity

For low shear this is calculated to EC3 Equation 6.13. In the high shear case Equation 6.29 is used. Where the high shear condition applies, the moment capacity calculation is made less complicated by conservatively adopting a simplified shear area.

Lateral torsional buckling checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

You can switch off lateral torsional buckling checks by specifying that the entire length between the supports is continuously restrained.

If you use this option you must be able to provide justification that the beam is adequately restrained against lateral torsional buckling during construction.

When the checks are required you can position restraints at any point within the length of the main beam and can set the effective length of each sub-beam (the portion of the beam between one restraint and the next) either by giving factors to apply to the physical length of the beam, or by entering the effective length that you want to use. Each sub-beam which is not defined as

being continuously restrained is checked in accordance with EC3 clause 6.3.2.3.

Deflection checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Tekla Structural Designer calculates relative deflections. (see: [Deflection checks \(page 73\)](#))

The following deflections are calculated for the loads specified in the construction stage load combination:

- the dead load deflections i.e. those due to the beam self weight, the Slab Wet loads and any other included dead loads,
- the imposed load deflections i.e. those due to construction live loads,
- the total load deflection i.e. the sum of the previous items.

The loads are taken as acting on the steel beam alone.

The “Service Factor” (default 1.0), specified against each loadcase in the construction stage combination is applied when calculating the above deflections.

If requested by the user, the total load deflection is compared with either a span-over limit or an absolute value The initial default limit is span/200.

NOTE Adjustment to deflections. If web openings have been defined, the calculated deflections are adjusted accordingly. See: [Web openings \(page 109\)](#)

Composite stage design (Composite beam: EC4 Eurocode)

Tekla Structural Designer performs all checks for the composite stage condition in accordance with EC4 unless specifically noted otherwise.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Equivalent steel section - Ultimate limit state \(ULS\) \(page 102\)](#)
- [Section classification \(ULS\) \(page 102\)](#)
- [Member strength checks \(ULS\) \(page 102\)](#)
- [Minimum area of transverse reinforcement \(page 104\)](#)
- [Shear connectors \(ULS\) \(page 104\)](#)
- [Lateral torsional buckling checks \(ULS\) \(page 106\)](#)
- [Section properties - serviceability limit state \(SLS\) \(page 107\)](#)
- [Deflection checks \(SLS\) \(page 108\)](#)
- [Stress checks \(SLS\) \(page 108\)](#)

- [Natural frequency checks \(SLS\) \(page 109\)](#)
- [Cracking of concrete \(SLS\) \(page 109\)](#)

Equivalent steel section - Ultimate limit state (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

An equivalent steel section is determined for use in the composite stage calculations by removing the root radii whilst maintaining the full area of the section. This approach reduces the number of change points in the calculations while maintaining optimum section properties.

Section classification (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Tekla Structural Designer classifies the section in accordance with the requirements of EC3, 5.5.2 except where specifically modified by those of EC4.

A composite section is classified according to the highest (least favorable) class of its steel elements in compression. The compression flange and the web are therefore both classified and the least favorable is taken as that for the whole section.

Flanges of any class that are fully attached to a concrete flange are assumed to be Class 1. The requirements for maximum stud spacing according to clause 6.6.5.5 (2) are checked and you are warned if these are not satisfied.

There are a small number of sections which fail to meet Class 2 at the composite stage. Although EC4 covers the design of such members they are not allowed in this release of Tekla Structural Designer.

Member strength checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

It is assumed that there are no loads or support conditions that require the web to be checked for transverse force. (clause 6.5)

Member strength checks are performed at the point of maximum moment, the point of maximum shear, the position of application of each point load, and at all other points of interest along the beam.

Shear capacity (Vertical)

The resistance to vertical shear, V_{Rd} , is taken as the resistance of the structural steel section, $V_{pl,a,Rd}$. The contribution of the concrete slab is neglected in this calculation.

The shear check is performed in accordance with EC3, 6.2.6.

Moment capacity

For full shear connection the plastic resistance moment is determined in accordance with clause 6.2.1.2. For the partial shear connection clause 6.2.1.3 is adopted.

In these calculations the steel section is idealized to one without a root radius so that the position of the plastic neutral axis of the composite section can be determined correctly as it moves from the flange into the web.

Where the vertical shear force, V_{Ed} , exceeds half the shear resistance, V_{Rd} , a (1- ρ) factor is applied to reduce the design strength of the web - as per clause 6.2.2.4.

Shear capacity (Longitudinal)

The design condition to be checked is: $v_{Ed} \leq v_{Rd}$ where:

v_{Ed} = design longitudinal shear stress

v_{Rd} = design longitudinal shear strength (resistance)

v_{Ed} is evaluated at all relevant locations along the beam and the maximum value adopted.

v_{Rd} is evaluated taking account of the deck continuity, its orientation and the provided reinforcement.

This approach uses the "truss analogy" from EC2. (See Figure 6.7 of EC2).

In these calculations, two planes are assumed for an internal beam, and one for an edge beam. Only the concrete above the deck is used in the calculations.

The values of v_{Rd} based on the concrete "strut" and the reinforcement "tie" are calculated. The final value of v_{Rd} adopted is then taken as the minimum of these two values.

The angle of the strut is minimised to minimise the required amount of reinforcement - this angle must lie between 26.5 and 45 degrees.

In the calculations of v_{Rd} the areas used for the reinforcement are as shown in the following table.

Decking angle	Reinforcement type	Area used
perpendicular	transverse	that of the single bars defined or for mesh the area of the main wires ^[1]
	other	that of the single bars defined or for mesh the area of the main wires ^[1]
parallel	transverse	that of the single bars defined or for mesh the area of the main wires ^[1]

Decking angle	Reinforcement type	Area used
	other	single bars have no contribution, for mesh the area of the minor wires ^[2]

^[1]These are the bars that are referred to as longitudinal wires in BS 4483: 1998 Table 1.

^[2]These are the bars that are referred to as transverse wires in BS 4483: 1998 Table 1.

If the decking spans at some intermediate angle (θ_r) between these two extremes then the program calculates:

- the longitudinal shear resistance as if the sheeting were perpendicular, $V_{Rd,perp}$,
- the longitudinal shear resistance as if the sheeting were parallel, $V_{Rd,par}$,
- then the modified longitudinal shear resistance is calculated from these using the relationship, $V_{Rd,perp}\sin^2(\theta_r) + V_{Rd,par}\cos^2(\theta_r)$.

Minimum area of transverse reinforcement (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

The minimum area of transverse reinforcement is checked in accordance with clause 6.6.6.3.

Shear connectors (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Dimensional requirements

Various limitations on the use of studs are given in the code.

The following conditions in particular are drawn to your attention:

Parameter	Rule	Clause/Comment
Spacing	Ductile connectors may be spaced uniformly over length between critical cross-sections if: - All critical cross-sections are Class 1 or 2 - The degree of shear connection, η is within the range given by 6.6.1.2	6.6.1.3(3) - not checked

Parameter	Rule	Clause/Comment
	and - the plastic resistance moment of the composite section does not exceed 2.5 times the plastic resistance moment of the steel member alone.	
Edge Distance	$e_D \geq 20 \text{ mm}$	6.6.5.6(2) - not checked
	$e_D \leq 9 * t_f * \sqrt{235/f_y}$	6.6.5.5(2) - applies if bare steel beam flange is Class 3 or 4 - not checked
Location	If it cannot be located in the center of trough, place alternately either side of the trough throughout the span	6.6.5.8(3) - not checked
Cover	The value from EC2 Table 4.4 less 5mm, or 20mm whichever is the greater.	6.6.5.2(2) - not checked

The program does not check that the calculated stud layout can be fitted in the rib of the deck.

Design resistance of the shear connectors

For ribs parallel to the beam the design resistance is determined in accordance with clause 6.6.4.1. The reduction factor, k_l is obtained from Equation 6.22. For ribs perpendicular to the beam, clause 6.6.4.2 is adopted.

The reduction factor, k_t is obtained from Equation 6.23.

The factor k_t should not be taken greater than the appropriate value of $k_{t,max}$ from the following table:

No of stud connectors per rib	Thickness of sheet, t mm	Studs with ≤ 20 mm and welded through profiled steel sheeting, $k_{t,max}$	Profiled sheeting with holes and studs with d = 19 or 22 mm, $k_{t,max}$
$n_r = 1$	≤ 1.0	0.85	0.75
	> 1.0	1.00	0.75
$n_r = 2$	≤ 1.0	0.70	0.60
	> 1.0	0.80	0.60

NOTE Only the first column of values of $k_{t,max}$ is used from the above table since the technique of leaving holes in the deck so that studs can be welded directly to the beam is not used.

For cases where the ribs run at an angle, θ_r the reduction factor is calculated as:

$$k_t * \sin^2 \theta_r + k_l * \cos^2 \theta_r$$

Stud optimization is a useful facility since there is often some over conservatism in a design due to the discrete changes in the size of the section.

If you choose the option to optimize the shear studs, then Tekla Structural Designer will progressively reduce the number of studs either until the minimum number of studs to resist the applied moment is found, until the minimum allowable interaction ratio is reached or until the minimum spacing requirements are reached. This results in partial shear connection.

The program can also automatically layout groups of 1 or 2 studs with constraints that you specify.

The degree of shear connection is checked at the point of maximum bending moment or the position of a point load if at that position the maximum utilization ratio occurs.

NOTE During the selection process, in auto design mode point load positions are taken to be "significant" (i.e. considered as positions at which the maximum utilization could occur) if they provide more than 10% of the total shear on the beam. For the final configuration and for check mode all point load positions are checked.

To determine if the degree of shear connection is acceptable Tekla Structural Designer applies the following rules:

- If the degree of shear connection at the point of maximum moment is less than the minimum permissible shear connection, then this generates a FAIL status,
- If the point of maximum utilization ratio occurs at a point that is not the maximum moment position and the degree of shear connection is less than the minimum permissible shear connection, then this generates a WARNING status,
- If the degree of shear connection at any other point load is less than the minimum permissible shear connection, then this does not affect the status in any way.

Lateral torsional buckling checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

The concrete slab is assumed to be laterally stable and hence there is no requirement to check lateral torsional buckling at the composite stage. (Clause 6.4.1).

Section properties - serviceability limit state (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

A value of the short term elastic (secant) modulus, E_{cm} is defaulted in Tekla Structural Designer for the selected grade of concrete. The long term elastic modulus is determined by dividing the short term value by a user defined factor - default 3.0. The elastic section properties of the composite section are then calculated using these values as appropriate (see the table below).

This approach is used as a substitute for the approach given in EC4 Equation 5.6 in which a knowledge of the creep coefficient, ϕ_t , and the creep multiplier, Ψ_L is required. It is envisaged that you will make use of EN 1992-1-1 (Ref. 6) when establishing the appropriate value for the factor.

EN 1994-1-1, clause 7.3.1.(8) states that the effect on deflection due to curvature imposed by restrained drying shrinkage may be neglected when the ratio of the span to the overall beam depth is not greater than 20. This relates to normal weight concrete. Tekla Structural Designer makes no specific allowance for shrinkage curvature but does provide you with a Warning when the span to overall depth exceeds 20 irrespective of whether the concrete is normal weight or lightweight. Where you consider allowance should be made, it is suggested that you include this as part of the 'factor' described above.

Tekla Structural Designer calculates the deflection for the beam based on the following properties:

Loadcase type	Properties used
self-weight	bare beam
Slab dry	bare beam
Dead	composite properties calculated using the long term elastic modulus
Live	composite properties calculated using the effective elastic modulus appropriate to the long term load percentage for each load. The deflections for all loads in the loadcase are calculated using the principle of superposition.
Wind	composite properties calculated using the short term elastic modulus

Loadcase type	Properties used
Total loads	these are calculated from the individual loadcase loads as detailed above again using the principle of superposition

Deflection checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Tekla Structural Designer calculates relative deflections. (see: [Deflection checks \(page 73\)](#)).

The composite stage deflections are calculated in one of two ways depending upon the previous and expected future load history:

- the deflections due to all loads in the Slab dry loadcase and the self-weight of the beam are calculated based on the inertia of the steel beam alone (these deflections are not modified for the effects of partial interaction).

NOTE It is the Slab dry deflection alone which is compared with the limit, if any, specified for the Slab loadcase deflection.

- the deflections for all loads in the other loadcases of the Design combination will be based on the inertia of the composite section allowing for the proportions of the particular load that are long or short term (see above). When necessary these will be modified to include the effects of partial interaction.

NOTE Tekla Structural Designer reports the deflection due to imposed loads alone (allowing for long and short term effects). It also reports the deflection for the SLAB loadcase, as this is useful for pre-cambering the beam. The beam Self-weight, Dead and Total deflections are also given to allow you to be sure that no component of the deflection is excessive.

NOTE Adjustment to deflections. If web openings have been defined, the calculated deflections are adjusted accordingly. See: [Web Openings \(page 109\)](#)

Stress checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

There is no requirement to check service stresses in EC4 for buildings (clause 7.2.2). However, since the deflection calculations are based on elastic analysis

then at service loads it is logical to ensure that there is no plasticity at this load level.

Tekla Structural Designer calculates the worst stresses in the extreme fibers of the steel and the concrete at serviceability limit state for each load taking into account the proportion which is long term and that which is short term. These stresses are then summed algebraically. Factors of 1.00 are used on each loadcase in the design combination (you cannot amend these). The stress checks assume that full interaction exists between the steel and the concrete at serviceability state. The stresses are not reported unless the stress limit is exceeded, in which case a warning message is displayed.

Natural frequency checks (SLS) (Beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Tekla Structural Designer calculates the approximate natural frequency of the beam based on the simplified formula published in the Design Guide on the vibration of floors (Ref. 6) which states that Natural frequency = $18 / \sqrt{\delta}$

In line with the calculation of natural frequency of $18 / \sqrt{\delta}$ for a pin ended beam with applied UDL, we calculate δ (in mm) as the maximum static instantaneous deflection based upon the composite inertia (using the short term modular ratio) but not modified for the effects of partial interaction as:

$$\delta = \% \max \delta_{\text{self+slab}} + \% \max \delta_{\text{other dead}} + \% \max \delta_{\text{live}}$$

The engineer can specify:

- Percentage self wt + slab deflection (default 100%)
- Percentage other dead deflection (default 100%)
- Percentage live load deflection (default 10%)
- Factor of increased dynamic stiffness of concrete flange (default 1.1)

NOTE Natural frequency is calculated for composite beams, but can also be optionally requested for pin ended non-composite beams by selecting **Calculate natural frequency** in the non-composite beam properties.

Cracking of concrete (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

Clause 7.4.1(4) simply supported beams in unproped construction, requires a minimum amount of longitudinal reinforcement over an internal support. This is not checked by Tekla Structural Designer as it is considered a detailing requirement.

Web openings (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)

NOTE When the regional code has been set to Eurocode, Tekla Structural Designer adopts the approach to web openings which is specific to the UK National Annex.

Guidance on size and positioning of web openings to EC3

As each web opening is added it is checked against certain geometric and proximity recommendations taken from Table 2.1 Section 2.6 of SCI Publication P355.

NOTE These geometric limits should normally be observed when providing openings in the webs of beams. It should be noted that these limits relate specifically to composite beams and caution should be used in applying these limits to non-composite beams.

Parameter	Limit	
	Circular Opening	Rectangular Opening
Max. depth of opening:	$\leq 0.8h$	$\leq 0.7h$
Min. depth of Tee,	$\geq t_f + 30 \text{ mm}$	$\geq 0.1h$
Min. depth of Top Tee:	As above	As above and $\geq 0.1 I_o$ if unstiffened
Max. ratio of depth of Tees: h_b/h_t h_b/h_t	≤ 3 ≥ 0.5	≤ 2 ≥ 1
Max. unstiffened opening length, l_o Max. stiffened opening length, l_o	- - - -	$\leq 1.5 h_o$ high shear* $\leq 2.5 h_o$ low shear $\leq 2.5 h_o$ high shear* $\leq 4 h_o$ low shear
Min. width of web post: - Low shear regions - High shear regions	$\geq 0.3h_o$ $\geq 0.4h_o$	$\geq 0.5 I_o$ $\geq I_o$
Corner radius of rectangular openings:	-	$r_o \geq 2 t_w$ but $r_o \geq 15 \text{ mm}$
Min. width of end post, S_e :	$\geq 0.5 h_o$	$\geq I_o$ and $\geq h$

Parameter	Limit	
	Circular Opening	Rectangular Opening
Min. horizontal distance to point load:	$\geq 0.5 h$	$\geq h$
- no stiffeners	$\geq 0.25 h_o$	$\geq 0.5 h_o$
- with stiffeners		

* A high shear region is where the design shear force is greater than half the maximum value of design shear force acting on the beam.

Symbols used in the above table:

h = overall depth of steel section

h_o = depth of opening [diameter for circular openings]

h_t = overall depth of upper Tee [including flange]

h_b = overall depth of lower Tee [including flange]

l_o = (clear) length of opening [diameter for circular openings]

s_e = width of end post [minimum clear distance between opening and support]

t_f = thickness of flange

t_w = thickness of web

r_o = corner radius of opening

In addition, the following fundamental geometric requirements must be satisfied.

$d_o \leq 0.8 \cdot h$ for circular openings

$d_o \leq 0.7 \cdot h$ for rectangular openings

$d_o < 2 \cdot (d_{oc} - t_t - r_t)$

$d_o < 2 \cdot (h - d_{oc} - t_b - r_b)$

$d_2 < d_{oc} - d_o/2 - t_t - t_s/2$

$d_2 < h - t_b - d_{oc} - d_o - t_s/2$

$l_o < 2 \cdot L_c$

$l_o < 2 \cdot (L - L_c)$

$L_s < 2 \cdot L_c$

$L_s < 2 \cdot (L - L_c)$

where

d_t = the depth of the web of the upper tee section measured from the underside of the top flange

d_{oc} = the distance to the centre line of the opening from the top of the steel section

d_2 = the distance from the edge of the opening to the centre line of the stiffener

t_s = thickness of stiffener [constrained to be the same top and bottom]

t_t = the thickness of the top flange of the steel section

t_b = the thickness of the bottom flange of the steel section

r_t = root radius at the top of the steel section

r_b = root radius at the bottom of the steel section

L_c = the distance to the centre line of the opening from the left hand support

L = the span of the beam

NOTE Dimensional checks - The program does not check that openings are positioned in the best position (between 1/5 and 1/3 length for udl's and in a low shear zone for point loads). This is because for anything other than simple loading the best position becomes a question of engineering judgment or is pre-defined by the service runs.

NOTE Adjustment to deflections - The calculated deflections are adjusted to allow for the web openings

Circular openings as an equivalent rectangle

Each circular opening is replaced by equivalent rectangular opening, the dimensions of this equivalent rectangle for use in all subsequent calculations are:

$d_o' = 0.9 * \text{opening diameter}$

$l_o = 0.45 * \text{opening diameter}$

Properties of tee sections

When web openings have been added, the properties of the tee sections above and below each opening are calculated in accordance with Section 3.3.1 of SCI P355 (Ref. 8) and Appendix B of the joint CIRIA/SCI Publication P068 (Ref. 9). The bending moment resistance is calculated separately for each of the four corners of each opening.

Design at construction stage

The following calculations are performed where required for web openings:

- Axial resistance of tee sections
- Classification of section at opening
- Vertical shear resistance

- Vierendeel bending resistance
- Web post horizontal shear resistance
- Web post bending resistance
- Web post buckling resistance
- Lateral torsional buckling
- Deflections

Design at composite stage

The following calculations are performed where required for web openings:

- Axial resistance of concrete flange
- Vertical shear resistance of the concrete flange
- Global bending action - axial load resistance
- Classification of section at opening
- Vertical shear resistance
- Moment transferred by local composite action
- Vierendeel bending resistance
- Web post horizontal shear resistance
- Web post bending resistance
- Web post buckling resistance
- Deflections

Deflections

For both non-composite and composite beams without openings the deflection analysis includes the effect of shear. For composite beams this is conservative because it uses the shear area and shear modulus of the bare beam.

The deflection of a beam with web openings *should** be greater than that of the same beam without openings due to two effects,

- the reduction in the beam inertia at the positions of openings due to primary bending of the beam,
- the local deformations at the openings due to vierendeel effects. This has two components - that due to shear deformation and that due to local bending of the upper and lower tee sections at the opening.

The primary bending deflection is established by 'discretising' the member and using a numerical integration technique based on 'Engineer's Bending Theory' - $M/I = E/R = \sigma/y$. In this way the discrete elements that incorporate all or part of an opening will contribute more to the total deflection.

The component of deflection due to the local deformations around the opening is established using a similar process to that used for cellular beams

which is in turn based on the method for castellated beams given in the SCI publication, "Design of castellated beams. For use with BS 5950 and BS 449".

The method works by applying a 'unit point load' at the position where the deflection is required and using a 'virtual work technique to estimate the deflection at that position.

For each opening, the deflection due to shear deformation, δ_s , and that due to local bending, δ_{bt} , is calculated for the upper and lower tee sections at the opening. These are summed for all openings and added to the result at the desired position from the numerical integration of primary bending deflection.

Note that in the original source document on castellated sections, there are two additional components to the deflection. These are due to bending and shear deformation of the web post. For castellated beams and cellular beams where the openings are very close together these effects are important and can be significant. For normal beams the openings are likely to be placed a reasonable distance apart. Thus in many cases these two effects will not be significant. They are not calculated for such beams but in the event that the openings are placed close together a warning is given.

* The above technique for calculating the deflection of a beam with web openings does NOT include shear deflection due to the primary bending. Consequently, if the shear deflection component is more significant than that due to openings, it is possible that the reported deflection for a beam with web openings is less than that reported for the same beam without openings.

Precast concrete planks

The effect of web openings on composite beams with PC planks is not within the scope of SCI P401. Web openings can be modeled but are ignored in both design at construction stage and design at composite stage when a PC plank is used. Design will be carried out treating the steel beam as one with no web openings.

2.4 Steel column design to EC3

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Design method \(page 115\)](#)
- [Simple columns \(page 115\)](#)
- [Ultimate Limit State - Strength \(page 115\)](#)
- [Ultimate limit state - Buckling \(page 118\)](#)
- [Serviceability limit state \(page 123\)](#)

Design method (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

Unless explicitly stated all steel column calculations in Tekla Structural Designer are in accordance with the relevant sections of EC3 (Ref. 1) and the associated National Annex.

A full range of strength, buckling and serviceability checks are carried out.

NOTE A sway assessment is also performed. This can optionally be de-activated in the column properties for those columns or column stacks for which it would be inappropriate.

Simple columns (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

A general column could be designated as a “simple column” to indicate that it does not have any applied loading in its length. Simplified design rules exist for such columns as they are only subject to axial forces and moments due to eccentricity of beam reactions, (moments due to frame action or due to member loading are assumed not to occur).

NOTE The simple column design rules have not yet been implemented in Tekla Structural Designer: such columns are thus classed as “beyond scope” when they are designed.

Ultimate limit state strength (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

Strength checks relate to a particular point on the member and are carried out at 5th points and “points of interest”, (i.e. positions such as maximum moment, maximum axial etc.)

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Classification \(page 115\)](#)
- [Shear capacity \(page 116\)](#)
- [Moment capacity \(page 117\)](#)
- [Axial capacity \(page 116\)](#)
- [Combined bending and axial capacity \(page 118\)](#)

Classification (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The classification of the cross section is in accordance with Table 5.2. General columns can be classified as:

- Plastic Class = 1
- Compact Class = 2
- Semi-compact Class = 3
- Slender Class = 4

Class 4 sections are not allowed.

Implementation of the below clauses is as follows:

- Classification is determined using 5.5.2 (6) and not 5.5.2 (7).
- 5.5.2 (9) is not implemented as clause (10) asks for the full classification to be used for buckling resistance.
- 5.5.2 (11) is not implemented.
- 5.5.2 (12) is not implemented. A brief study of UK rolled UBs and UCs showed that flange induced buckling in normal rolled sections is not a concern.

Axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The axial tension and compression capacity checks are performed according to clause 6.2.3 and clause 6.2.4 respectively.

The following points should be noted:

- Clause 6.2.3 (3) - is not considered
- Clause 6.2.3 (4) - is not considered
- Clause 6.2.3 (5) - is not considered

Shear capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The shear check is performed at the point under consideration according to clause 6.2.6(1):

- for the absolute value of shear force normal to the y-y axis, $V_{y,Ed}$, and
- for the absolute value of shear force normal to the z-z axis, $V_{z,Ed}$

The following points should be noted:

- No account is taken of fastener holes in the flange or web - see 6.2.6 (7)
- Shear is not combined with torsion and thus the resistance is not reduced as per 6.2.6 (8)

Shear buckling

When the web slenderness exceeds 72ε shear buckling can occur in rolled sections. Tekla Structural Designer designs for shear web buckling with accordance to EN 1993-1-5:2006.

The following should however, be noted:

- The approach to design assumes a non-rigid end post, this is more conservative than the design that takes the approach assuming a rigid end post.
- Physical support conditions have been assumed to be equivalent to “transverse stiffeners at supports only”.
- All hole cut outs must be small in accordance to section EN 1993-1-5:2006 2.3
- If a grade of steel was to be used other than S335, S355 and S460 η will be taken as 1.00 regardless of National Annex.

As we are only designing for the case where no stiffeners are being used, $a \rightarrow \infty$ therefore $c \rightarrow \infty$ so $V_{bf,Rd} \rightarrow 0$, where $V_{bf,Rd}$ is the contribution from the flange - see 5.4(1)

The design assumes negligible contribution to the design shear force V_{Ed} from shear from torque, therefore V_{Ed} is restricted to $0.5 V_{bw,Rd}$. Tekla Structural Designer will warn you if this limit is exceeded - see 7.1(1)

Moment capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The moment capacity check is performed at the point under consideration according to clause 6.2.5(1):

- for the moment about the y-y axis, $M_{y,Ed}$, and
- for the moment about the z-z axis, $M_{z,Ed}$

The moment capacity can be influenced by the magnitude of the shear force (“low shear” and “high shear” conditions). Where the high shear condition applies, the moment capacity calculation is made less complicated by conservatively adopting a simplified shear area.

The maximum absolute shear to either side of a point of interest is used to determine the moment capacity for that direction.

High shear condition about y-y axis

The treatment of high shear is axis dependent. In this release for CHS, if high shear is present, the moment capacity check about the y-y axis is Beyond Scope.

High shear condition about z-z axis

For rolled sections in this release, if high shear is present normal to the z-z axis then the moment capacity check about the z-z axis is Beyond Scope.

For hollow sections, there is greater potential for the section to be used to resist the principal moments in its minor axis. Of course for CHS and SHS there is no major or minor axis and so preventing high shear arbitrarily on one of the two principal axes does not make sense. Nevertheless, if high shear is present normal to the z-z axis then in this release the moment capacity about the z-z axis is not calculated, the check is Beyond Scope.

If high shear is present in one axis or both axes and axial load is also present, the moment capacity check is given a Beyond Scope status.

If high shear and moment is present in both axes and there is no axial load ("biaxial bending") the moment capacity check is given a Beyond Scope status.

Combined bending and axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The combined bending and axial capacity check covers the interaction of axial load and bending to clause 6.2.9 appropriate to the type (for example – doubly symmetric) and classification of the section.

If high shear is present in one axis or both axes and axial load is also present, the cross-section capacity check is given a Beyond Scope status.

If high shear and moment is present in both axes and there is no axial load ("biaxial bending") the cross-section capacity check is given a Beyond Scope status.

The following additional points should be noted:

the combined effects of axial load and bending are assessed and clause 6.2.9 (4) is not considered.

the current "reduced plastic moduli" approach in the published tables is used and not the approximate method given in 6.2.9.1(5). The latter is less conservative than the current approach at low levels of 'n'.

Ultimate limit state buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

NOTE Classification for buckling checks - For rolled I sections, RHS and SHS classification varies along the member length due to the section forces changing along the member length - for combined buckling, the worst classification of the whole member (column stack) should be used. In theory it should be the worst classification in the segment length considered for buckling. However, the segment lengths for lateral torsional buckling, minor axis strut buckling and major axis strut

buckling can all be different. It is simpler and conservative therefore to use the worst classification in the entire member length (column stack).

NOTE Click the links below to find out more:

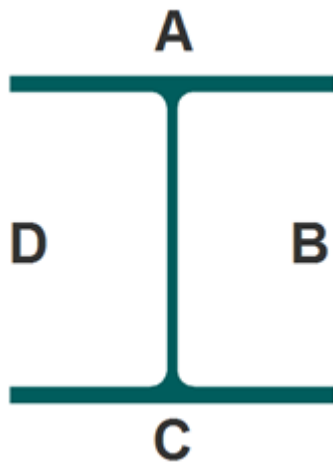
- [Compression buckling \(page 119\)](#)
 - [Lateral torsional buckling \(page 121\)](#)
 - [Combined buckling \(page 122\)](#)
-

Compression buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

General columns must be checked to ensure adequate resistance to buckling about both the major and minor axes and they must also be checked in the torsional mode over an associated buckling length. Since the axial force can vary throughout the column and the buckling lengths in the two planes do not necessarily coincide, all buckling modes must be checked. There may be circumstances where it would not be safe to assume that the combined buckling check will always govern (see below).

Restraints

Restraints to strut buckling are determined from the incoming members described within Tekla Structural Designer. The buckling checks are based on these.



Restraining members framing into either Face A or C will provide restraint to major axis strut buckling. Members framing into either Face B or D will provide restraint to minor axis strut buckling. Tekla Structural Designer determines the strut buckling restraints but you can override these.

To identify Faces A, B, C & D for an individual column, see .

NOTE The program assumes that any member framing into the major or minor axis of the column provides restraint against strut buckling in the appropriate plane. If you believe that a certain restraint in a particular direction is not effective then you can either override the restraint or adjust the effective length to suit – to 2.0L for example.

Torsional and torsional flexural buckling restraint is only provided at points restrained coincidentally against major **and** minor axis strut buckling.

NOTE Provided a level is restrained coincidentally against major and minor axis strut buckling, the program assumes that any member framing into the appropriate faces provides restraint against torsional and torsional flexural buckling at that level. There are a number of practical conditions that could result in torsional restraint not being provided at floor levels. At construction levels this is even more possible given the likely type of incoming member and its associated type of connection. You must consider the type of connection between the incoming members and the column since these can have a significant influence on the ability of the member to provide restraint to one, none or both column flanges. For example, consider a long fin plate connection for beams framing into the column web where the beam stops outside the column flange tips to ease detailing. The fin plate is very slender and the beam end is remote from the column flanges such that it may not be able to provide any restraint to torsional or torsional flexural buckling. The fact that a slab is usually present may mitigate this. You are expected to override the ineffective restraint.

Tekla Structural Designer always assumes full restraint at the base and at the roof level when carrying out buckling design checks – you are warned on validation if your restraint settings do not reflect this. Restraints are considered effective on a particular plane providing they are within $\pm 45^\circ$ to the local coordinate axis system.

Effective lengths

In all cases Tekla Structural Designer sets the default effective length to 1.0L, it does not attempt to adjust the effective length in any way. You are expected to adjust the strut buckling effective length factor (up or down) as necessary. Different values can apply in the major and minor axis.

NOTE It is assumed that you will make a rational and “correct” choice for the effective lengths between restraints. The default value for the effective length factor of 1.0L may be neither correct nor safe.

The torsional and torsional flexural buckling effective length factor (1.0L) can not be changed.

Any strut buckling effective length can take the type “Continuous” to indicate that it is continuously restrained over that length. There is no facility for

specifying torsional, or torsional flexural buckling effective lengths as “Continuous”.

There is no guidance in EC3 on the values to be used for effective length factors for beam-columns.

For general columns - The minimum theoretical value of effective length factor is 0.5 and the maximum is infinity for columns in rigid moment resisting (RMR) frames. Practical values for simple columns are in the range 0.7 to 2.0 (see For simple columns below). In theory, values less than 1.0 can be chosen for non-sway frames or for sway frames in which the effects of sway are taken into account using either the amplified forces method or P-Delta analysis. However, EC3 states that when second-order effects are included in this way then the design “may be based on a buckling length equal to the system length” i.e. an effective length factor of 1.0. The program default of 1.0 matches this requirement but allows you flexibility for special situations.

One such situation might be in RMR frames where the principal moments due to frame action preventing sway are in one plane of the frame. There will often be little or no moment out-of-plane and so, if using the amplified forces method, the amplification of these moments has little effect on the overall design. Nevertheless the stability out-of-plane can still be compromised by the lack of restraint due to sway sensitivity in that direction. In such cases a value of greater than 1.0 (or substantially greater) may be required. Similarly, in simple construction where only eccentricity moments exist, it is only the brace forces that 'attract' any amplification. Thus for the column themselves the reduced restraining effect of a sway sensitive structure may require effective length factors greater than 1.0.

For Simple columns - There is no concept of simple columns in EC3 and hence no information on effective lengths either. However, reference can be made to the “NCCI” on the subject of simple construction but none of this includes the clear guidance on effective lengths of simple columns that was included as Table 22 in BS 5950-1: 2000. Again the program defaults the effective length factor to 1.0

Compression resistance

The relevant buckling resistances are all calculated from Equation 6.47.

These consist of the flexural buckling resistance about both the major and minor axis i.e. $N_{b,y,Rd}$ and $N_{b,z,Rd}$ over the buckling lengths L_{yy} and L_{zz} and where required the buckling resistance in the torsional or flexural-torsional modes, $N_{b,x,Rd}$.

All section types are checked for flexural buckling. It is only hollow sections that do not need to be checked for torsional and torsional-flexural buckling.

Lateral torsional buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

Effective lengths

The value of effective length factor is entirely your choice. The default value is 1.0 and is editable for flanges A & C. Any individual segment (for either flange) can be 'continuously restrained' in which case no lateral torsional buckling (LTB) check is carried out for that flange over that segment.

For a level to be treated as torsional restraint it must have both A and C restraint **and** also be restrained for compression buckling in both the major and minor axis.

There is no specific factor for destabilizing loads - you can however adjust the 'normal' effective length factor to allow for such effects.

To identify flanges A & C for an individual column, see .

Lateral torsional buckling resistance

The LTB resistance is calculated from Equation 6.55.

LTB does not need to be checked for the following sections:

- circular and square hollow sections,
- equal and unequal flanged I/H sections loaded in the minor axis only.

Combined buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The column must be restrained laterally in two directions, and torsionally at the top and bottom of the 'design length'. This equates to LTB restraint to faces A and C and restraint to major and minor axis compression buckling all being coincident. A design length is allowed to have intermediate restraint and if the restraint requirements are not met at a particular floor then the design length does not have to be between adjacent floors. Thus a stack can 'jump' floors or sheeting rails can be attached. It is assumed that the restraints for compression buckling are fully capable of forcing the buckled shape. Hence, the compression buckling resistance is based on the restrained lengths whilst the LTB resistance ignores the intermediate restraint and hence is based on the full design length.

NOTE It is conservative to ignore the intermediate restraints in this latter case.

Loading within the design length is allowed.

Effective lengths

Effective lengths for flexural (i.e. strut major and strut minor) and lateral torsional buckling are as described in the appropriate section above.

Combined buckling resistance

The combined buckling resistance is checked in accordance with Equations 6.61 and 6.62. Both equations are evaluated at the ends of the design length

and, except for simple columns, at the position of maximum moment, if that lies elsewhere.

Eccentricity moments due to beam end reactions are added to the “real” moments due to frame action:

- in the first case the uniform moment factors are calculated from the real moments and applied to the real moments. Eccentricity moments are only added if they are more critical.
- in the second case all moments are “combined” and all uniform moment factors are based on the combined moments and applied to them.

WARNING Equations 6.61 and 6.62 are limited to doubly symmetric sections and do not consider torsional or torsional flexural buckling. Should either of these buckling modes govern the compression buckling check, you should consider very carefully whether the calculations provided by Tekla Structural Designer for combined buckling can be considered valid.

Serviceability limit state (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)

The column is assessed for sway and the following values are reported for each stack:

- Sway X and α_{critx}
- Sway Y and α_{crity}
- Sway X-Y

Depending on the reported α_{crit} the column is classified as Sway or Non sway accordingly.

NOTE A sway assessment is only performed for the column if the Alpha Crit Check box is checked on the Column Properties dialog. If very short columns exist in the building model these can distort the overall sway classification for the building. For this reason you may apply engineering judgement to uncheck the Alpha Crit Check box for those columns for which a sway assessment would be inappropriate.

2.5 Column base plate design to EC3

Practical applications

In the current release of Tekla Structural Designer only simple column base plate design checks are supported, following design procedures based on SCI P358 (Ref. 11).

Tekla Structural Designer will check the base plate size and thickness and resistance to bending in uplift, the shear resistance of the base, the size of the foundation bolts, and the size and type of any welds that are required.

Graphics are used to display the base plate in its current state. You can therefore graphically see the base that you are defining and the results that the design process has achieved. This allows you to see the effects of any modifications that you make, instantly on the screen.

NOTE Simple bases and moment bases adopt quite different design models. You will find that a moment base with a very small moment will not result in the same design as a simple base (zero moment) carrying the same axial load. You should therefore judge whether the moment is negligible for each such design.

Scope

Design Code Options

Simple column bases can be designed to the following EC3 code versions:

- EC3
- EC3 Finland NA
- EC3 Ireland NA
- EC3 Malaysia NA
- EC3 Norway NA
- EC3 Singapore NA
- EC3 Sweden NA
- EC3 UK NA

NOTE There is no EC3 part 8 for Malaysia so EC3 recommended values are used instead.

Base plate steel grades

Base plates will use S235, S275, S355 and S460 family groups. Strengths greater than 460 are beyond scope. User defined grades ≤ 460 are allowed.

Design method and valid sections and forces for design

Base plate design uses the equivalent T-stub method for axial forces, where an 'Effective area' is calculated for T-stubs in compression, and base plate bending is assessed for T-stubs in tension. Horizontal major and/or minor shear is allowed, but no moments i.e. pinned base design.

- Only I/H and hollow section steel columns are valid for design.
- Minor shear is a valid design force for base plates on all of these column sections except for Rectangular Hollow Sections.
- Axial tension is a valid design force only on I/H section steel columns with the following bolt layout conditions:
 - Doubly symmetric bolt layouts
 - Total of 2 rows of bolts in the base plate
 - Bolt rows outside the column flanges have 2 or more bolts in each row
 - Bolt rows inside the column flanges have exactly 2 bolts in each row

NOTE For bolt rows both outside and inside the column flanges, a Warning will be given if the first and last bolt in the row lies vertically on plan outside the flange tips (which follows the guidance given at the bottom of page 70 of SCI P398 (Ref. 13)).

Column position on the base plate

The column can only be concentric on the base plate.

Base plate position on the concrete foundation

The base plate can be eccentric on the concrete foundation along both the minor and major axes. Note, such eccentricities are achieved in the concrete foundation properties.

Concrete foundation design

Concrete foundation design is separate to, but cognizant of, the base plate design. Only isolated foundations are valid concrete foundations for base plate design checks in first release.

Tekla Connection Designer

Under EC regional code there is no longer an option to export a base plate to Tekla Connection Designer from Tekla Structural Designer. For EC design checks, of column splices or beam to column connections for example, Tekla Connection Designer can still be used as a standalone product.

Theory and assumptions

'Equivalent T-stub in Compression - Effective Area' Design Method

The 'Effective area' method is used for design under axial compression. The principle steps in this method are as follows:

- Calculate the design bearing strength, f_{jd}
- Calculate the required plate area, A_{reqd} and the actual area provided, A_{plate}
- Compare A_{plate} and A_{reqd} (Note, A_{plate} must be greater than A_{reqd} to proceed)
- Calculate the stiff cantilever projection dimension, 'c'
- Calculate the effective plate area, A_{eff}
- Compare A_{eff} and A_{reqd} (Note, A_{eff} must be greater than A_{reqd} to 'pass')

Clarification of the design bearing strength calculation

The design bearing strength, f_{jd} , between the underside of the base plate and the bedding material in the grout space is given by:

$$f_{jd} = \beta_j * \alpha * f_{cd}$$

where

β_j = foundation joint material coefficient = (2/3)

α = a coefficient which accounts for diffusion of the concentrated force within the foundation

f_{cd} = design value concrete compressive strength = $\alpha_{cc} * f_{ck} / \gamma_c$

α_{cc} = coefficient for long term effects

f_{ck} = concrete characteristic cylinder strength

γ_c = partial safety factor for concrete

NOTE Even where a concrete foundation is not modeled, the coefficient, α , is calculated from the concrete dimensions shown in the base plate properties. The plan dimensions of the concrete foundation must be larger than the base plate (plus an allowance for grout), and the depth of the concrete foundation must be larger than the embedded bolt length plus an allowance for bottom cover.

'Equivalent T-stub in Tension - Plate Bending' Design Method

The 'Equivalent T-stub in tension' method is used for base plate bending design under axial tension.

Per Figure 6.2 of BS EN 1993-1-8 (Ref. 12). the distances between bolt centers and flange/web welds (m_x and m respectively) are measured 20% into the leg

lengths of the welds. Where a butt weld is modelled on a flange the weld leg length is taken as zero.

Yield line patterns for bolt rows outside column flanges are based on Table 5.3 of SCI P398 (Ref. 13), and for bolt rows inside the flanges the yield line patterns are based on Tables 2.2 to 2.4 of SCI P398 (Ref. 13). For rows inside the flanges, the alpha factor is derived by an iterative process discussed in Appendix G of SCI P398 (Ref. 13).

Per Clause 6.2.6.11(2) of BS EN 1993-1-8 (Ref. 12) no prying force is assumed in determining base plate thickness. The T-stub resistance calculation in first release also assumes full tension resistance of the bolts i.e. there is no allowance for prying in bolt tension design.

NOTE There are no concrete design checks in first release such as cone or pull-out failure, and also no check for anchor plate punching under uplift.

Horizontal Shear

Horizontal shear transfer and resistance can be achieved by one of three options: friction, shear on bolts, or combined friction plus shear on bolts. The default option is friction, with a coefficient of friction defaulted at 0.2 but editable by the user. The vector sum of major and minor shear forces is used as the design shear force, to allow for uniaxial and biaxial shear situations.

In cases where uplift is present then a combined shear and tension check is carried out.

NOTE For the options shear on bolts and combined friction plus shear on bolts, the horizontal shear is assumed to be distributed evenly across all of the bolts in the base plate.

Welds

Weld resistance, which is calculated using the simplified method given in Clause 4.5.3.3 of BS EN 1993-1-8 (Ref. 12), varies by section type and whether direct contact in bearing is flagged on or off in the base plate properties - when on, axial force on the weld is taken as zero.

- For I/H sections, flange welds resist the vector sum of axial force and minor shear force, while web welds resist major shear force. Forces and resistances are given in Force units.
- For RHS sections, flange welds (faces A & C) resist axial force, while web welds (faces B & D) resist major shear force. Forces and resistances are given in Force units.
- For CHS and SHS sections, an all around full profile weld resists the vector sum of axial force, major shear force and minor shear force. Forces and resistances are given in Force per length units.

NOTE A Warning will be given (in the plate bending check) when a base plate is in uplift and a partial length web weld has been modelled (I/H column sections only).

Analysis

Connection forces are established from a global analysis of the building as a whole. Column base plates in Tekla Structural Designer have a limited set of design forces for which they can be designed. Non-design forces are identified and, where their value is greater than a given limit, they are displayed to you in the results along with a Warning status. The given limits are defined on the Design Forces page of the Design Settings dialog available from the Design tab on the ribbon.

The forces from the global analysis are treated in the following manner:

- Simple column bases are designed for the positive axial (compression) force at the base of the column, the negative axial (tension) force at the base of the column, the major shear (foundation reaction) in the plane of the column web (column section minor axis), and minor shear (foundation reaction) in the plane of the column flanges (column section major axis). Bases are orientated to the column's major and minor axes and hence there is no requirement to resolve the force when the column is rotated. Columns can only be sloped in the plane of the web and the bottom stack axial force and shear are resolved into vertical and horizontal forces in the base.

Where the global analysis includes second-order (P-Delta) effects the Ultimate Limit State design forces will include these effects also. However, for column bases the design forces for soil bearing pressure calculations are taken from an elastic global analysis of the unfactored loadcases without second-order effects. Nevertheless, EQU and GEO load combinations are not considered in the base plate design i.e. these combinations do not appear in the results. All seismic (SEIS) combinations appear in the results. However, those deriving from ELF are considered for design while those from RSA result in Beyond Scope status.

Sign Conventions

The following sign conventions apply.

Convention looking at the column with face A on the right:

- Positive major shear from face C to A,
- Positive minor shear from face D to B,
- Positive axial into the base.

NOTE The column member direction arrow is placed on face A. Viewed on plan, face lettering advances clockwise. For further details, see .

2.6 Steel brace design to EC3

Design method

Unless explicitly stated all brace calculations are performed in accordance with the relevant sections of BS EN 1993-1-1:2005 (Ref. 1) (herein abbreviated to EC3) and the associated National Annex.

A basic knowledge of the design methods for braces in accordance with the design code is assumed.

Classification

No classification is required for braces in tension.

Braces in compression are classified according to Table 5.2 as either: Class 1, Class 2, Class 3 or Class 4.

Class 4 sections are not allowed except for angle (single and double) and tee sections.

Axial tension

An axial tension capacity check is performed according to clause 6.2.3.(1)

The following points should be noted:

- Clause 6.2.3 (3) - is not considered
- Clause 6.2.3 (4) - is not considered
- Clause 6.2.3 (5) - is not considered

Axial compression

An axial compression capacity check is performed according clause 6.2.4.(1)

Compression buckling

If axial compression exists, the member is also assessed according to clause 6.3.1.1(1) for flexural buckling resistance about both the major and minor axis i.e. $N_{b,y,Rd}$ and $N_{b,z,Rd}$ over the buckling lengths L_{yy} and L_{zz} and where required the torsional, or flexural-torsional buckling resistance, $N_{b,x,Rd}$.

For single and double angles (both equal and unequal) there is also a compression buckling check about the v-v axis, over the buckling length L_{vv} . For single angles, L_{vv} is the system length L , while for double angles L_{vv} is $L/3$.

All section types are checked for flexural buckling. It is only hollow sections that do not need to be checked for torsional and torsional-flexural buckling.

Different effective length factors can be applied for flexural buckling in the major and minor axis. For single and double angles an effective length factor can also be applied in the v-v axis. The default effective length is 1.0L in all 3 cases. You are expected to adjust the effective length factor (up or down) as necessary.

The torsional and torsional flexural buckling effective length factor (1.0L) can not be changed.

2.7 Steel single, double angle and tee section design to EC3

Unless otherwise stated all calculations are in accordance with the relevant sections of EN 1993-1: 2005 (Ref. 1).

Design method

The EC3 (Ref. 1) design method adopted is dictated by the member characteristic type:

- "Beam", "Truss member top" or "Truss member bottom" characteristic:
 - Member is designed for axial tension, compression, shear, bending and combined forces - consistent with the method detailed in [Steel Beam Design to EC3 \(page 74\)](#)
- "Brace", "Truss internal" or "Truss member side" characteristic:
 - Member is designed for axial tension, compression and compression buckling only - consistent with the method detailed in [Steel Brace Design to EC3 \(page 129\)](#)

NOTE Additional limitations have to be considered when designing angle and tee sections to the above design methods (as described below).

Limitations

In the current version when designing tees, single, and double angles to EC3, the following checks remain beyond scope:

	Tee	Angle	Double angle
Classification	ok	ok	ok
Axial tension	ok	ok	ok
Axial compression	ok	ok	ok

	Tee	Angle	Double angle
Shear	ok	ok	ok
Buckling	ok	ok	ok
Combined strength	ok	ok	ok
LTB	Beyond scope	ok	Beyond scope
Combined buckling	Beyond scope	Beyond scope	Beyond scope
Deflection	ok	ok	ok

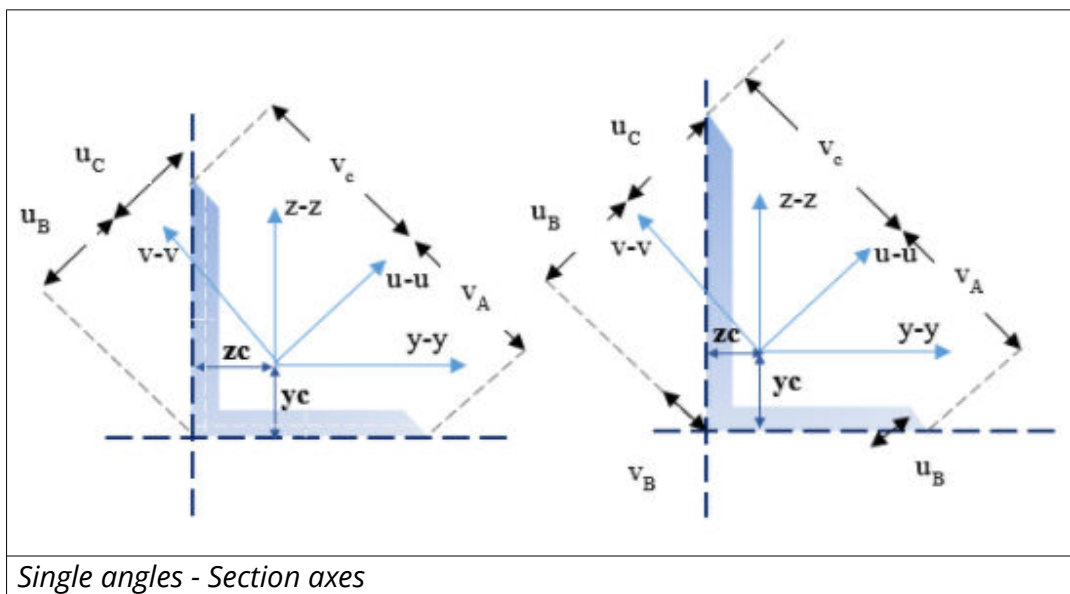
In addition, the following limitations apply:

- All sections and in particular single angles are assumed to be effectively loaded through the shear center such that no additional torsion moments are developed. In addition no direct allowance is made for 'destabilizing loads'.
- Design excludes bending of the outstand leg of single and double angles loaded eccentrically e.g. supporting masonry.
- Conditions of restraint can be defined as top and bottom flange for lateral torsional buckling LTB. It is upon these that the buckling checks will be based. For the current release intermediate LTB restraints are omitted (i.e. only fully restrained for LTB, or unrestrained).
- Single, double angles and tee sections subject to moment with high shear are beyond scope.

Section axes

For all sections:

- y-y is the axis parallel to the flanges (major axis)
- z-z is the axis perpendicular to the flanges (minor axis)
- for Single angles and Double angles
 - z-z parallel to long side (leg) - single angles
 - z-z parallel to long side (leg) - double angles with long leg back to back
 - z-z parallel to short side (leg) - double angles with short leg back to back
- u-u is the major principal axis for single angles
- v-v is the minor principal axis for single angles



Classification checks

For axial compression and bending both the web and flange (Leg 1 and Leg 2) are classified as Class 1, Class 2, Class 3 or Class 4 and the worst of the two is the resultant classification for that cross section.

The rules from Table 5.2 (sheet 2 of 3) of EC3 are used for tee sections. In particular the rules of "Part subject to compression" are used to classify the tee section since these are more conservative compared to the limits of "Part subject to bending and compression".

For double angles and single angles the rules from Table 5.2 (sheet 3 of 3) of EC3 are used.

NOTE Class 4 section classification is only allowed for tees, double angles and single angles.

Axial tension check

Section 6.2.3 of EC3 is used for this design check.

Axial compression check

An axial compression capacity check is performed according to clause 6.2.4.(1)

Shear check

Section 6.2.6 of EC3 is used for this design check.

Moment check

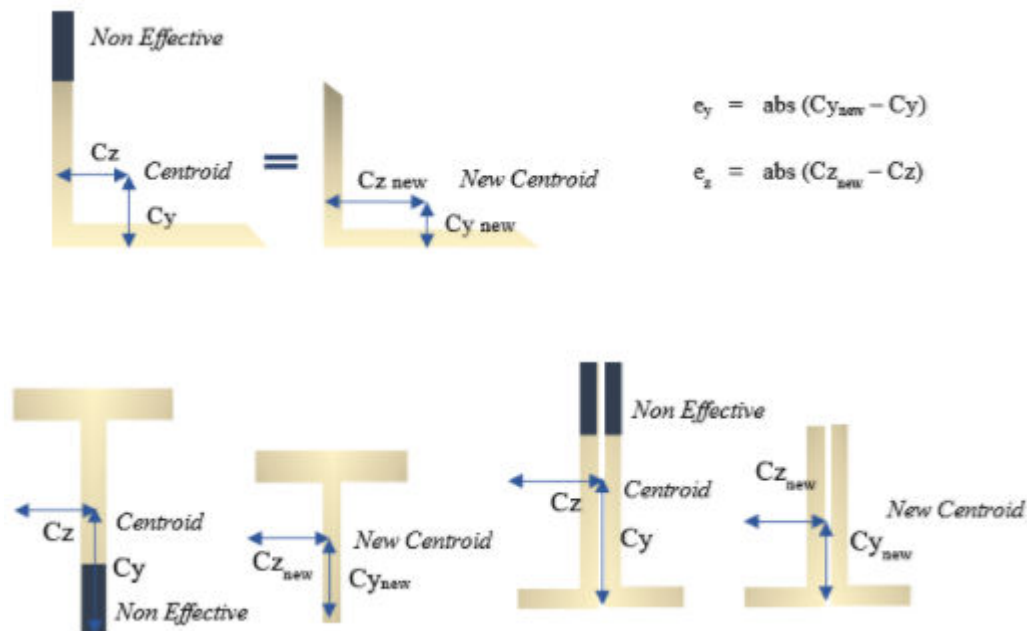
Section 6.2.5 of EC3 is used for this design check.

NOTE Tees, double angles and single angles are designed as Class 4. Equation 6.15 is used for class 4 slender sections.

NOTE Tees, double angles and single angles subject to moment with high shear are beyond scope.

Moment capacity for Class 4 slender sections:

Class 4 sections are designed as Class 3 effective sections.



Hence, additional moments are induced in the member due to the shift of the centroid of the effective cross-section compared to that of the gross section when under axial compression only.

Thus:

$$\Delta M_{\text{Ed},y} = e_y \times N_{\text{Ed,max}}$$

$$\Delta M_{\text{Ed},z} = e_z \times N_{\text{Ed,max}}$$

Where:

$N_{\text{Ed,max}}$ is the max compressive force in the span.

For tees and double angles $e_y = 0$. Hence, total minor design moment = minor design moment.

Where:

e_y and e_z = the shift of the centroid of the effective area A_{eff} relative to the centre of gravity of the gross cross section

$$e_y = \text{abs}(c_{y_{new}} - c_y)$$

$$e_z = \text{abs}(c_{z_{new}} - c_z)$$

So finally, a total moment is obtained for which the moment design check is performed:

$$M_{total\ y} = \text{Abs}(M_{Ed,y}) + \text{Abs}(\Delta M_{Ed,y})$$

$$M_{total\ z} = \text{Abs}(M_{Ed,z}) + \text{Abs}(\Delta M_{Ed,z})$$

Single angles - asymmetric sections:

Single angles with continuous lateral – torsional restraint along the length are permitted to be designed on the basis of geometric axis (y, z) bending.

Single angles without continuous lateral – torsional restraint along the length are designed using the provision for principal axis (u, v) bending since we know that the principal axes do not coincide with the geometric ones.

$$\Delta M_u = \Delta M_y \times \cos\theta + \Delta M_z \times \sin\theta$$

$$\Delta M_v = -\Delta M_y \times \sin\theta + \Delta M_z \times \cos\theta$$

Note that when principal axis design is required for single angles and the classification is Class 4, all moments are resolved into the principal axes (total moment in the principal axes u-u and v-v).

Combined bending and axial check

Section 6.2.9 of EC3 is used for this design check.

For Class 3 - Equation 6.42 is applied:

$$\text{Abs}(N_{Ed} / A) + \text{abs}(M_{y,Ed} / W_{el,min,y}) + \text{abs}(M_{z,Ed} / W_{el,min,z}) \leq f_y / \gamma_{M0}$$

For Class 4 - Equation 6.43 is applied:

$$\text{Abs}(N_{Ed} / A_{eff}) + (\text{abs}(M_{y,Ed}) + \text{abs}(\Delta M_{y,Ed})) / W_{eff,min,y} + \text{abs}(M_{z,Ed}) + \text{abs}(\Delta M_{z,Ed}) / W_{eff,min,z} \leq f_y / \gamma_{M0}$$

Note that total moments are used when the section classification is Class 4.

For Class 4 cross section capacity - Equation 6.44 is applied.

Lateral torsional buckling check

NOTE LTB check for tees and double angles is currently beyond scope.

EC3 is completely silent on LTB check for asymmetric sections such as single angles and mono-symmetric sections such as double angles and tees.

Hence we follow the approach of the Blue Book (Ref. 10 (page 137)):

Firstly we calculate the equivalent slenderness coefficient (φ) (From Blue book) and the equivalent slenderness λ_{LT} (BS approach).

Then we find the non-dimensional slenderness $\overline{\lambda_{LT}}$ in order to follow the EC design approach.

Conservatively we have taken: $\overline{\lambda_{LT}} = \lambda_{LT}/\lambda_1$

NOTE All intermediate LTB restraints for single angles, double angles and tees are ignored.

Compression buckling check

Section 6.3.1.1 of EC3 is used for this design check.

Effective length:

The value of effective length factor is entirely at the user's choice. The default value is generally 1.0 although for truss members, there are special settings for the effective length depending upon the type of section and its position in the truss.

Different values can apply in the major and minor axis. Coincident strut restraint points in these two directions define the length for torsional and torsional flexural buckling and this can also have an effective length factor (this is assumed to be 1.0 and cannot be changed).

There is no guidance in EC3 on the values to be used for effective length factors for beam-columns although Annex BB does contain some information on the effective lengths to be used in trusses but not for single, double angles and tees.

It is the responsibility of the user to adjust the value from 1.0 (for the effective length factor) and to justify such a change on the compression page.

For tees:

Check:

1. the buckling length in the major axis – Use $L_{yy} = L \cdot \text{major factor}$
2. the buckling length in the minor axis – Use $L_{zz} = L \cdot \text{minor factor}$

3. the buckling length for the torsional mode – Use $L_{xx} = 1.00 * \text{minor factor}$

For single and double angles:

Check:

1. the buckling length in the major axis – Use $L_{yy} = L * \text{major factor}$
2. the buckling length in the minor axis – Use $L_{zz} = L * \text{minor factor}$
3. the buckling length for the torsional mode – Use $L_{xx} = 1.00 * L$
 - a. Double angles – Check as single angle
 - Use $L_y = L_{yy} / 3$
 - Use $L_z = L_{zz} / 3$
 - Use $L_x = L_{xx} / 3$
 - b. Double angles – Check as double angle
4. the buckling length for the principal axis, v-v – Use $L_{vv} = 1.00 * L$
 - Double angles – Check as single angle
 - Use $L_v = L_{vv} / 3$

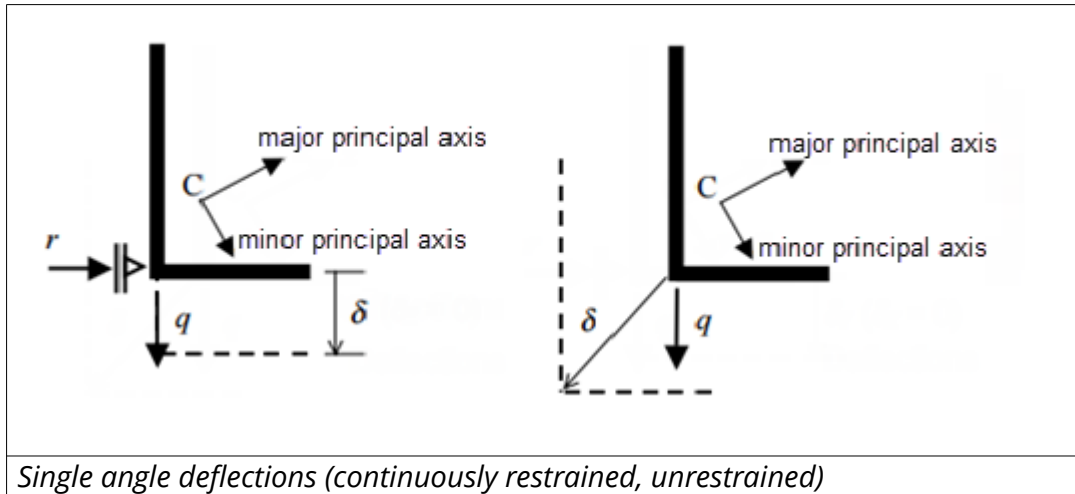
For double angles for (4) & (3a) minor principal axis buckling & torsional buckling respectively – half of the axial force and half of the double angle area is used.

Combined buckling check

In the current version this check is beyond scope for single angles, double angles and tees.

Deflection of single angles

If a single angle is continuously restrained the major geometric moment and major geometric section properties are used in the general equation governing the beam deflection.



However, because single angle geometric axes are not coincident with the principal axes; a different procedure is required if the angle is not continuously restrained, the procedure being as follows:

1. External loads are transposed from the geometric axes to the principal axes.
2. The deflection equations are used to calculate deflections in the principal axes.
3. These principal axis deflections are then transposed to geometric axes again.

2.8 References to EC3 and EC4

1. British Standards Institution. *BS EN 1993-1-1:2005 +A1:2014. Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures – Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*. BSI 2015.
2. British Standards Institution. *NA to BS EN 1993-1-1:2005. UK National Annex to Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures – Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*. BSI 2005.
3. National Standards Authority of Ireland. *I.S EN 1993-1-1 National Annex. Irish National Annex (informative) to Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures – Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*. NSAI 2007.

4. British Standards Institution. *BS EN 1994-1-1:2004. Eurocode 4: Design of composite steel and concrete structures - Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*. BSI 2005.
5. British Standards Institution. *NA to BS EN 1994-1-1:2004. UK National Annex to Eurocode 4: Design of composite steel and concrete structures - Part 1-1: General rules and rules for buildings*. BSI 2005.
6. British Standards Institution. *BS EN 1992-1-1:2004 +A1:2014. Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures. General rules and rules for buildings*. BSI 2015.
7. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication 076. Design Guide on the Vibration of Floors*. SCI 1989.
8. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication P355. Design of Composite Beams with Large Web Openings*. SCI 2011.
9. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication 068. Design for openings in the webs of composite beams*. SCI 1987.
10. The Steel Construction Institute and The British Constructional Steelwork Association Ltd. *Publication P363. Steel Building Design: Design Data*. SCI and BCSA 2009.
11. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication P358. Joints in Steel Construction - Simple Joints to Eurocode 3*. SCI and BCSA 2011.
12. British Standards Institution. *BS EN 1993-1-8: 2005 - Eurocode 3: Design of steel structures - Part 1-8: Design of joints*. BSI 2010.
13. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication P398. Joints in Steel Construction - Moment-Resisting Joints to Eurocode 3*. SCI and BCSA 2013.
14. The Steel Construction Institute. *Publication P360. Stability of Steel Beams and Columns*. SCI 2011.

3 Concrete design to EC2

Tekla Structural Designer designs reinforced concrete members to a range of international codes. This reference guide specifically describes the design methods applied in the software when EN 1992-1-1:2004 ([Ref. 1](#)) ([page 244](#)) is selected.

Unless explicitly noted otherwise, all clauses, figures and tables referred to are from EN 1992-1-1:2004

Within the remainder of this guide EN 1992-1-1:2004 is referred to as EC2.

The following topics are covered:

- [General parameters \(EC2\) \(page 139\)](#)
- [Concrete beam design to EC2 \(page 141\)](#)
- [Concrete column design to EC2 \(page 173\)](#)
- [Concrete wall design to EC2 \(page 194\)](#)
- [Concrete slab design to EC2 \(page 216\)](#)
- [Pad and strip base design to EC2 \(page 223\)](#)
- [Pile cap design to EC2 \(page 230\)](#)
- [Punching shear checks to EC2 \(page 234\)](#)

3.1 General parameters (EC2)

Shrinkage and Creep

The following design parameters can be specified individually as part of each member's properties set.

Permanent Load Ratio

This is the ratio of quasi-permanent load to design ultimate load.

i.e. $SLS/ULS = (1.0G_k + \Psi_2 Q_k) / (\text{factored } G_k + \text{factored } Q_k \cdot \text{IL reduction})$

If Q_k is taken as 0 then:

$$\text{SLS/ULS} = (1 / 1.25) = 0.8$$

Hence, setting the permanent load ratio to 0.8 should provide a conservative upper bound for all cases.

When determining this ratio more precisely, consideration should be given to the amount of IL reduction specified, for example (assuming $G_k = Q_k$ and $\Psi_2 = 0.3$):

For 50%IL reduction,

$$\text{SLS/ULS} = (1 + 0.3) / (1.25 + 1.5 \cdot 0.5) = 0.65$$

For no IL reduction,

$$\text{SLS/ULS} = (1 + 0.3) / (1.25 + 1.5) = 0.47$$

NOTE The program defaults to a permanent load ratio of 0.65 for all members - you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

Relative Humidity

Typical input range 20 to 100%

Age of Loading

This is the age at which load is first applied to the member.

The Age of Loading should include adjustments necessary to allow for cement type and temperature as defined in EC2 Annex B.

NOTE The program defaults the Age of Loading to 14 days for all members - you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

Reinforcement Anchorage Length Parameters

Max. Bond Quality Coefficient

Acceptable input range 0.5 to 1.0

In the bond stress calculation (Cl 8.4.2), the bond quality coefficient η_1 can be either 1.0 or 0.7 depending on section depth. Where 0.7 is used the bond strength is reduced and laps are extended.

Specifying a maximum of 1.0 for the Bond Quality Coefficient allows the coefficient to vary between 0.7 and 1.0 as required, hence lap lengths will vary accordingly.

Some users may prefer to specify a maximum of 0.7 (which actually fixes the coefficient at 0.7), the effect is to standardise on the use of extended lap lengths throughout. Further conservatism can be introduced in all lap lengths by using a value as low as 0.5.

Plain Bars Bond Quality Modifier

Acceptable input range 0.1 to 1.0

In the EC2 Cl 8.4.2 bond stress calculation, there is no factor relating to the rib type of reinforcement, and no guidance on what adjustments if any should be made for plain bars.

In Tekla Structural Designer a factor "T" has been introduced (as in BS8110) to allow for this adjustment. It is the users responsibility to enter a suitable value for plain bars. (Until further guidance becomes available, we would suggest that as per BS8110 a value of 0.5 would be reasonable.)

Type-1 Bars Bond Quality Modifier

Acceptable input range 0.1 to 1.0

In the EC2 Cl 8.4.2 bond stress calculation, there is no factor relating to the rib type of reinforcement, and no guidance on what adjustments if any should be made for Type 1 bars.

In Tekla Structural Designer a factor "T" has been introduced (as in BS8110) to allow for this adjustment. It is the users responsibility to enter a suitable value for Type 1 bars. (Until further guidance becomes available, we would suggest that as per BS8110 a value of 0.8 would be reasonable.)

3.2 Concrete beam design to EC2

The topics in this section describe how the software applies EN 1992-1-1:2004 ([Ref. 1](#)) ([page 244](#)) to the design of reinforced concrete beams.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Limitations \(concrete beam and slab: EC2\) \(page 142\)](#)
- [Slender beams \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 142\)](#)
- [Cover to reinforcement \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 143\)](#)
- [Design parameters for longitudinal bars \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 144\)](#)
- [Side reinforcement \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 149\)](#)
- [Effective depth of section \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 149\)](#)
- [Design for bending for rectangular sections \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 150\)](#)
- [Design for bending for flanged sections \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 153\)](#)
- [Design shear resistance \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 155\)](#)
- [Minimum area of shear reinforcement \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 159\)](#)
- [Spacing of shear reinforcement \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 160\)](#)
- [Shear between flanges and web of flanged beams \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 161\)](#)
- [Additional tension reinforcement \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 164\)](#)

- Design values of shear resistance and torsional resistance moment (concrete beam: EC2) (page 164)
- Additional reinforcement for torsion (concrete beam: EC2) (page 168)
- Deflection check (concrete beam and slab: EC2) (page 170)

Limitations (concrete beam and slab: EC2)

The following general exclusions apply when designing concrete beams and slabs to EC2 in Tekla Structural Designer:

- Moment redistribution.
- Seismic design.
- Consideration of fire resistance. [You are however given full control of the minimum cover dimension to the reinforcement and are therefore able to take due account of fire resistance requirements.]
- Openings in the beam web.
- Bundled bars.
- Design for minor axis bending and shear.
- Design for axial forces.

In addition, for beams classified as "deep beams":

- all beams with a ratio of $1.5 < \text{span/overall depth} \leq 3.0$ are designed but with an appropriate Warning
- beams with a ratio of $\text{span/overall depth} \leq 1.5$ are *Beyond Scope*

Slender beams (concrete beam: EC2)

Second order effects associated with lateral instability may be ignored if beams are within the geometric limits given by the following;

$$L_{0t} \leq 50 \cdot b_{\text{comp}} / (h/b_{\text{comp}})^{1/3}$$

and

$$h/b_{\text{comp}} \leq 2.5$$

where

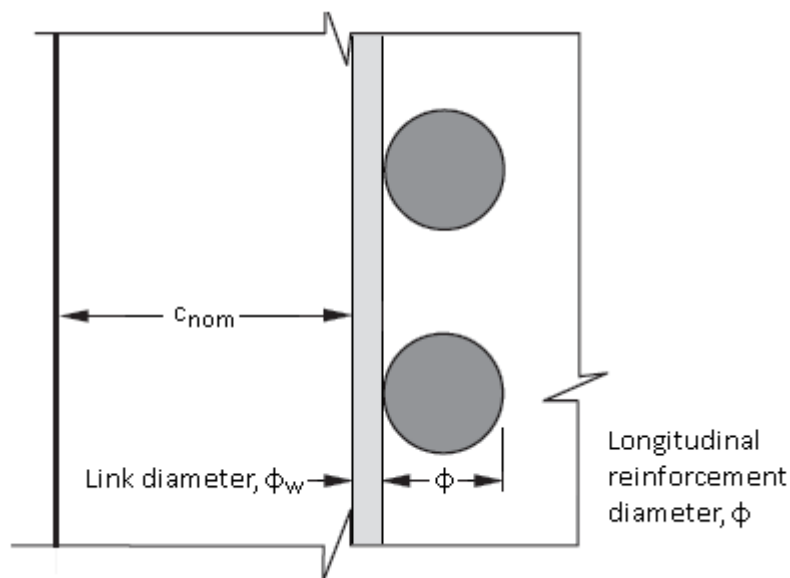
$$L_{0t} = \text{distance between torsional restraints, taken in Tekla Structural Designer as the distance between faces of supports}$$

h	=	total overall depth of the beam at the centre of L_{0t}
b_{comp}	=	width of the compression flange of the beam (= b_w for rectangular sections and b_{eff} for flanged beams)

If either of the above checks fail then a Warning is displayed.

Cover to reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2)

The nominal concrete cover is the distance between the surface of the reinforcement closest to the nearest concrete surface (including links and surface reinforcement where relevant) and the nearest concrete surface.



You are required to set a minimum value for the nominal cover, $c_{nom,u}$, for the top, bottom, sides and ends of each beam in the beam properties.

These values are then checked against the nominal limiting cover, $c_{nom,lim}$ which depends on the diameter of the reinforcement plus an allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} (specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Beam > General Parameters**).

Generally, the allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} is a NDP.¹ The recommended value is 10mm, but under strict controls it can be reduced to 5mm.

If $c_{nom,u} < c_{nom,lim}$ then a warning is displayed in the calculations.

Footnotes

Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete beam: EC2)

For each of these parameters, any user defined limits (as specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Beam > Reinforcement Layout**) These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Minimum diameter of reinforcement

The minimum diameters of reinforcement are set by the user in **Design Settings**, the initial default values being:

Minimum longitudinal bar size	12 mm	=
Minimum side bar size	16 mm	=
Minimum link bar size	8 mm	=

If the design results in a bar size less than the user specified limits the checks fails.

Maximum diameter of reinforcement

The maximum diameters of reinforcement are set by the user in **Design Settings**, the initial default values being:

Maximum bar size	32 mm	=
Maximum link bar size	16 mm	=

If the design results in a bar size greater than the user specified limits the checks fails.

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 cl 4.4.1.3 (1)P

In Section 8.8 of BS EN 1992-1-8:2004, additional rules are specified when "large diameter bars" are used in the design. A large diameter bar is defined as being a bar with a diameter larger than φ_{large} where φ_{large} is an NDP value.

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\varphi_{\text{large}} = 32 \text{ mm}$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA;**

$$\varphi_{\text{large}} = 40 \text{ mm}$$

In the current release the provisions of Section 8.8 are **not** implemented. If the design results in a bar size with $\varphi > \varphi_{\text{large}}$ then a warning is displayed to this effect, advising that the user should take account of the provisions of Section 8.8 when preparing the final design.

NOTE Clause 7.3.3 (2) indicates that cracking can be controlled either by restricting the bar diameter or the max spacing. Tekla Structural Designer adopts the latter approach using Table 7.3N - therefore the maximum bar diameters specified in Table 7.2N are not checked.

Minimum distance between bars

The minimum clear horizontal distance between individual parallel bars, $s_{\text{cl,min}}$, is given by;¹

$$s_{\text{cl,min}} \geq \text{MAX} [k_1 \cdot \varphi, d_g + k_2, s_{\text{cl,u,min}}, 20 \text{ mm}]$$

where

k_1	=	the appropriate NDP
k_2	=	the appropriate NDP
d_g	=	the maximum size of aggregate

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

φ	=	the maximum diameter of adjacent bars, φ_i and φ_j
$s_{cl,u,min}$	=	user specified minimum clear distance between bars

NOTE To allow you to make decisions regarding access for concrete compaction or size of aggregate, a value for the minimum clear distance between bars can be specified on the appropriate Reinforcement Settings page within Design Settings - separate values being set for bars in the top of a beam and for those in the bottom of a beam.

The minimum clear vertical distance between horizontal layers of parallel bars, $s_{cl,min}$, is given by;

$$s_{cl,min} \geq \text{MAX}[k_1 * \varphi, d_g + k_2, 20 \text{ mm}]$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$k_1 = 1.0$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**;

$$k_1 = 2.0$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Norwegian NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$k_2 = 5.0 \text{ mm}$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA**;

$$k_2 = 3.0 \text{ mm}$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

Maximum spacing of tension bars

The maximum centre to centre bar spacing for crack control, $s_{cr,max}$, is dependent on the maximum allowable crack width, w_{max} , specified in the beam properties from a menu of values which are: 0.20mm, 0.30mm or 0.40mm with a default value of 0.30mm.

The service stress in the reinforcement, σ_s , is given by;

$$\sigma_s = (A_{s,reqd}/A_{s,prov}) * (f_{yk}/\gamma_s) * R_{PL}$$

where

$A_{s,reqd}$ = area of reinforcement required for the maximum design Ultimate Limit State moment, M_{Ed}

$A_{s,prov}$ = area of reinforcement provided

R_{PL} = permanent load ratio

In the beam properties you are required to supply a value for the permanent load ratio, R_{PL} . A default of 0.65 has been assumed, but you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

The maximum allowable centre to centre bar spacing, $s_{cr,max}$, is then obtained from table 7.3N (shown below) by looking up the calculated value of the service stress in the reinforcement, σ_s , using interpolation between values of σ_s

Steel Service Stress, σ_s (N/mm²)	Max Allowable bar Spacing for crack control, $s_{cr,max}$		
	$w_{max} = 0.40$ mm	$w_{max} = 0.30$ mm	$w_{max} = 0.20$ mm
≤ 160	300	300	200
200	300	250	150
240	250	200	100
280	200	150	50
320	150	100	Warning
360	100	50	Warning
>360	Warning	Warning	Warning

Minimum area of reinforcement

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement, $A_{s,min}$, is given by;¹

$$A_{s,min} \geq \text{MAX}[k_{min1} * b_w * d * (f_{ctm}/f_{yk}), k_{min2} * b_w * d]$$

where

k_{min1} = the appropriate NDP value

k_{min2} = the appropriate NDP value

f_{ctm} = mean value of the axial tensile strength of the concrete

f_{yk} = characteristic yield strength of the reinforcement

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(1)

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

k_{min1}	=	0.26
k_{min2}	=	0.0013

NOTE There is no requirement to have a minimum area of compression reinforcement.

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement for crack control, $A_{s,min,cr}$ is given by;¹

$A_{s,min,cr}$	$\geq$	$0.4 \cdot k \cdot f_{ctm} \cdot A_{ct} / \sigma_s$
where		
k	=	1.0 when $h \leq 300$ 0.65 when $h \geq 800$
f_{ctm}	=	mean value of axial tensile strength of concrete $0.30 \cdot f_{ck}^{(2/3)}$ for concrete grades $\leq C50/60$ $2.12 \cdot \ln(1 + ((f_{ck} + 8)/10))$ for concrete grades $> C50/60$
σ_s	=	the interpolated reinforcement service stress from appropriate for the bar spacing of the reinforcement provided
A_{ct}	=	area of concrete in tension just before formation of first crack = $b \cdot y$ where y = the distance of the Elastic NA from bottom of beam

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement required, $A_{s,min,reqd}$, is then given by;

$A_{s,min,reqd}$	$\geq$	$\text{MAX} (A_{s,min}, A_{s,min,cr})$
------------------	--------	--

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.3.2(2)

Maximum area of reinforcement

The maximum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement, $A_{st,max}$, is given by;¹

$A_{st,max}$	$\leq$	$k_{max} \cdot A_c$
--------------	--------	---------------------

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(3)

The maximum area of longitudinal compression reinforcement, $A_{sc,max}$, is given by;

$$A_{sc,max} \leq k_{max} * A_c$$

where

$$k_{max} = \text{the appropriate NDP value}$$

$$A_c = \text{the cross sectional area of the beam}$$

$$= h * b_w$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA** and **Norwegian NA**;

$$k_{max} = 0.04$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$A_{st,max} = A_{sc,max} = \text{unlimited}$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(3)

Footnotes

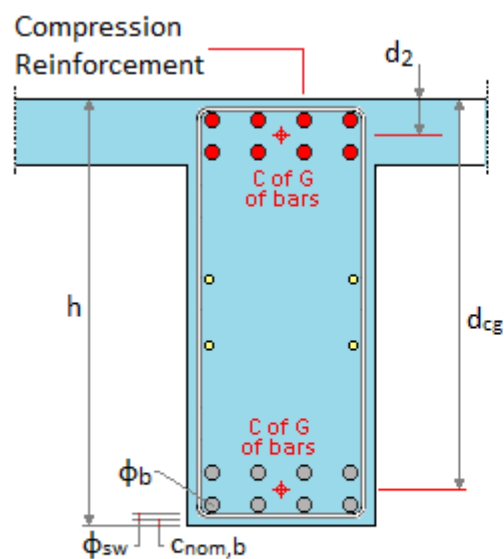
Side reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2)

To control cracking in beams with a total depth ≥ 1000 mm, side bars are provided in the side faces of the beam as per EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.3.3(3).

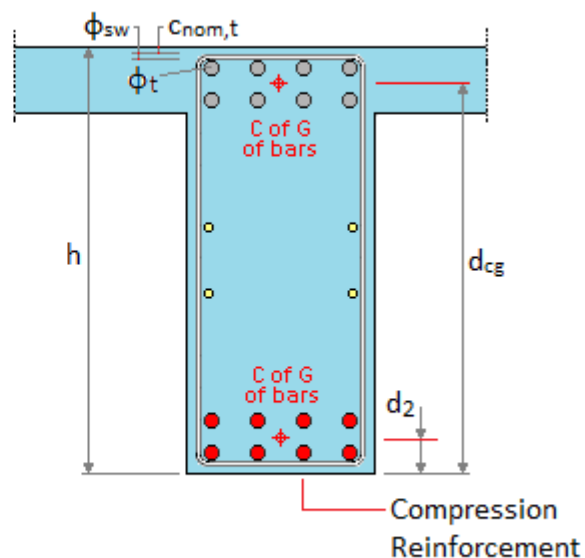
Effective depth of section (concrete beam: EC2)

For the design of the longitudinal tension reinforcement, the effective depth of a section, d is defined as the distance from the extreme concrete fibre in compression to the centre of gravity of the longitudinal tension reinforcement.

For the design of the longitudinal compression reinforcement, the effective depth in compression, d_2 is defined as the distance from the extreme fibre in compression to the centre of gravity of the longitudinal compression reinforcement.



Tension Reinforcement in Bottom of Beam



Tension Reinforcement in Top of Beam

Design for bending for rectangular sections (concrete beam: EC2)

Calculate the value of K from;

$$K = \frac{M_{Ed}}{(f_{ck} * b_w * d^2)}$$

Then calculate the limiting value of K, known as K' from;

$$K' = \frac{(2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2))}{50 \text{ N/mm}^2} \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$K' = \frac{(2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4))}{50 \text{ N/mm}^2} \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

k_i moment redistribution factors

δ moment redistribution ratio (= 1.0 in the current release)
=

γ_c the NDP partial safety factor for concrete
=

α_{cc} coefficient to take account of long term effects on compressive strength of concrete

λ 0.8 for $f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$
=
0.8 - $(f_{ck}-50)/400$ for $50 < f_{ck} \leq 90 \text{ N/mm}^2$
=

η 1.0 for $f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$
=
1.0 - $(f_{ck}-50)/200$ for $50 < f_{ck} \leq 90 \text{ N/mm}^2$
=

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Norwegian NA;**

γ_c 1.5
=

α_{cc} 0.85
=

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations and Swedish NA;**

γ_c 1.5
=

$$\alpha_{cc} = 1.0$$

IF $K \leq K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is not required.

Calculate the lever arm, z from;

$$z = \text{MIN}(0.5*d*[1 + (1 - 2*K/(\eta*\alpha_{cc}/\gamma_c))^{0.5}], 0.95*d)$$

The area of tension reinforcement required is then given by;

$$A_{st, reqd} = M_{Ed}/(f_{yd}*z)$$

where

$$f_{yd} = f_{yk}/\gamma_s$$

$$\gamma_s = \text{the NDP partial safety factor for reinforcement}$$

The depth to the neutral axis, x_u is given by;

$$x_u = 2*(d-z)/\lambda$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$\gamma_s = 1.15$$

IF $K > K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is required.

Calculate the depth to the neutral axis from;

$$x_u = \frac{d * (\delta - k_1)}{k_2} \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$x_u = \frac{d * (\delta - k_3)}{k_4} \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Calculate the stress in the reinforcement from;

$$f_{sc} = \text{MIN}(E_s * \epsilon_{cu3} * (1 - (d_2/x_u)), f_{yd})$$

where

d_2 the distance from the extreme fibre in compression to the c of g of the compression reinforcement

Calculate the limiting bending strength, M' from;

$$M' = K' * f_{ck} * b_w * d^2$$

Calculate the lever arm from;

$$z = 0.5 * d * [1 + (1 - 2 * K' / (\eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}]$$

The area of compression reinforcement required, $A_{s2,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{s2,reqd} = (M_{Ed} - M') / (f_{sc} * (d - d_2))$$

The area of tension reinforcement required, $A_{st,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{st,reqd} = M' / (f_{yd} * z) + A_{s2,reqd} * f_{sc} / f_{yd}$$

Design for bending for flanged sections (concrete beam: EC2)

IF $h_f < 0.1 * d$ THEN treat the beam as rectangular.

$$h_f = \text{MIN}(h_{f,side1}, h_{f,side2})$$

where

$h_{f,side i}$ = the depth of the slab on side " i " of the beam

Calculate the value of K from;

$$K = M_{Ed} / (f_{ck} * b_{eff} * d^2)$$

Calculate the lever arm, z from;

$$z = \text{MIN}(0.5 * d * [1 + (1 - 2 * K / (\eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}], 0.95 * d)$$

Calculate the depth of the rectangular stress block, $\lambda * x$ from;

$$\lambda * x = 2 * (d - z)$$

IF $\lambda * x \leq h_f$ THEN the rectangular compression block is wholly in the depth of the flange and the section can be designed as a rectangular section by setting $b_w = b_{eff}$.

IF $\lambda * x > h_f$ THEN the rectangular compression block extends into the rib of the flanged section and the following design method is to be used.

The design bending strength of the flange, M_f is given by;

$$M_f = f_{cd} * h_f * (b_{eff} - b_w) * (d - 0.5 * h_f)$$

The area of reinforcement required to provide this bending strength, $A_{sf, reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{sf, reqd} = M_f / (f_{yd} * (d - 0.5 * h_f))$$

The remaining design moment, $(M_{Ed} - M_f)$ is then taken by the rectangular beam section.

Calculate the value of K from;

$$K = (M_{Ed} - M_f) / (f_{ck} * b_w * d^2)$$

Then calculate the limiting value of K , known as K' from;

$$K' = (2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2)) \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$K' = (2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4)) \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

IF $K \leq K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is not required.

Calculate the lever arm, z from;

$$z = \text{MIN}(0.5 * d * [1 + (1 - 2 * K / (\eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}], 0.95 * d)$$

The area of tension reinforcement required is then given by;

$$A_{sr, reqd} = (M_{Ed} - M_f) / (f_{yd} * z)$$

The total area of tension reinforcement required, $A_{st,reqd}$ is then given by;

$$A_{st,reqd} = A_{sf,reqd} + A_{sr,reqd}$$

The depth to the neutral axis, x_u is given by;

$$x_u = 2 \cdot (d - z) / \lambda$$

IF $K > K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is required.

Calculate the depth to the neutral axis from;

$$x_u = d \cdot (\delta - k_1) / k_2 \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$x_u = d \cdot (\delta - k_3) / k_4 \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Calculate the stress in the reinforcement from;

$$f_{sc} = \text{MAX}(E_s \cdot \epsilon_{cu3} \cdot (1 - (d_2/x_u)), f_{yd})$$

where

d_2 = the distance from the extreme fibre in compression to the c of g of the compression reinforcement

Calculate the limiting bending strength, M' from;

$$M' = K' \cdot f_{ck} \cdot b_w \cdot d^2$$

Calculate the lever arm from;

$$z = 0.5 \cdot d \cdot [1 + (1 - 2 \cdot K' / (\eta \cdot \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}]$$

The area of compression reinforcement required, $A_{s2,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{s2,reqd} = (M_{Ed} - M_f - M') / (f_{sc} \cdot (d - d_2))$$

The area of tension reinforcement required, $A_{sr,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{sr,reqd} = M' / (f_{yd} \cdot z) + A_{s2,reqd} \cdot f_{sc} / f_{yd}$$

The total area of tension reinforcement required, $A_{st,reqd}$ is then given by;

$$A_{st,reqd} = A_{sf,reqd} + A_{sr,reqd}$$

Design shear resistance (concrete beam: EC2)

The design value of the shear resistance of a concrete section with vertical shear reinforcement, $V_{Rd,max}$ is given by;

$$V_{Rd,max} = 0.9 \cdot \alpha_{cw} \cdot b_w \cdot d \cdot v_1 \cdot f_{cw,d} / (\cot \theta + \tan \theta)$$

where

$$\theta = \text{MIN} \{ \theta_{\text{max}}, \text{MAX}[0.5 \cdot \sin^{-1} [2 \cdot V_{\text{Ed,max}} / (\alpha_{\text{cw}} \cdot b_w \cdot 0.9 \cdot d \cdot v_1 \cdot f_{\text{cwd}})], \theta_{\text{min}} \}$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA,**

$$f_{\text{cwd}}^1 = \alpha_{\text{ccw}} \cdot \min(f_{\text{ck}}, 50) / \gamma_{\text{C}}$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$f_{\text{cwd}} = \alpha_{\text{ccw}} \cdot f_{\text{ck}} / \gamma_{\text{C}}$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$\alpha_{\text{cw}} = 1.0$ (assuming no axial load in the beam)

$$\alpha_{\text{cw}} = 1.0$$

$$\gamma_{\text{C}} = 1.5$$

$$v_1 = 0.6 \cdot (1 - (f_{\text{ck}}/250)) f_{\text{ck}} \text{ in N/mm}^2$$

The limits of θ are given by $1 \leq \cot \theta \leq 2.5$ which gives;

$$\theta_{\text{max}} = \tan^{-1} 1$$

$$\theta_{\text{min}} = \tan^{-1}(0.4)$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\alpha_{\text{ccw}} = 1.0$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA;**

$$\alpha_{\text{ccw}} = 0.85$$

IF $V_{\text{Ed,max}} > V_{\text{Rd,max}}$

where

$V_{\text{Ed,max}}$ = the maximum design shear force acting anywhere on the beam

¹ Eqn (3.15) EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)P

THEN the shear design process FAILS since the section size is inadequate for shear (the compression strut has failed at the maximum allowable angle).

The design shear capacity of the minimum area of shear links actually provided, V_{nom} is given by²;

$$V_{nom} = (A_{sw,min,prov} / s_l) * 0.9 * d * f_{ywd} * \cot\theta$$

where

$A_{sw,min,prov}$ is the area of shear reinforcement provided to meet the minimum requirements.

$$f_{ywd} = f_{yw} / \gamma_s$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA** and **Swedish NA** the limiting values of θ are given by;

$$1 \leq \cot\theta \leq 2.5$$

$$\theta_{max} = \tan^{-1} 1$$

$$\theta_{min} = \tan^{-1}(0.4)$$

$$\gamma_s = 1.15$$

The maximum possible value for the shear resistance provided by this area of shear reinforcement will be when the angle of the compression strut is the minimum value i.e. $\cot\theta = 2.5$ and therefore V_{nom} can be simplified to;

$$V_{nom} = (A_{sw,min,prov} / s_l) * 2.25 * d * f_{ywd}$$

In any region, i ;

IF

$$V_{Ed,i} > V_{nom}$$

where

$V_{Ed,i}$ = the maximum shear in region i (see the next section for details of how this is determined in the support region)

THEN shear links are required in the region.

For designed shear links in shear region S_i , first calculate the angle of the compression strut from;

$$\theta_{Si} = \text{MIN}\{\theta_{max}, \text{MAX}[0.5 * \sin^{-1}[2 * V_{Ed,Si} / (\alpha_{cw} * b_w * 0.9 * d * v_1 * f_{cd})], \theta_{min}\}$$

² EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(3) Eqn (6.8)

The area of links required in shear region S_i is then given by;

$$(A_{sw, reqd}/s)_{S_i} = V_{Ed, S_i} / (0.9 * d * f_{ywd} * \cot \theta_{S_i})$$

where

V_{Ed, S_i} = the maximum shear force in shear region S_i

Does Tekla Structural Designer design for the shear force at the support, or at a distance d from the support?

The provisions of Section 6.2.1(8) of BS EN 1992-1-1:2004 allow that for members subject to 'predominantly uniformly distributed loading' the design shear force need not be checked at a distance less than d from the face of the support.

Tekla Structural Designer automatically takes advantage of the provision of Section 6.2.1(8).

In this context, a 'predominantly uniformly distributed loading' is defined as one in which the change in the shear force occurring at the face of the support, $V_{Ed, max}$ to that occurring at a distance d from the face of the support, $V_{Ed, d}$ is $\leq 25\% * V_{Ed, max}$ i.e.

$$V_{Ed, max} - V_{Ed, d} \leq 0.25 * V_{Ed, max}$$

The limiting value of $25\% * V_{Ed, max}$ is chosen to allow for variable and relatively small point loads occurring in the length d from the face of the support and yet not to exclude genuinely uniformly distributed loads in deeper beams.

The use of this limiting value effectively means that the rule is only taken advantage of for beams with uniformly distributed loads that have a span/depth ratio ≥ 8 .

Since beams in most structures fall in the range $20 \geq \text{span/depth} \geq 14$ this limit excludes only a very small percentage of beams from taking advantage of this enhancement.

Does Tekla Structural Designer enhance the shear strength of the section near the support?

Section 6.2.3(8) of BS EN 1992-1-1:2004 states;

"For members with loads applied on the **upper side** within a distance $0.5 * d \leq a_v \leq 2.0 * d$ **the contribution** of this load to the shear force V_{Ed} may be reduced by $\beta = a_v / (2 * d)$."

Using this rule, the shear force resulting from any design point load of value P that is applied to the upper surface of the concrete beam within the valid distance can be taken as;

$$V_{Ed, PL, R} = \beta * V_{Ed, PL}$$

However, the background paper to the UK NAs for BS EN 1992-1 and BS EN 1992-3 published as PD 6687-1:2010 draws attention to the problem of making use of this enhancement when there are multiple point loads or when the

beam is designed for an envelope of shear obtained from a number of load cases.

This document makes reference to a paper by Jackson et al "Enhancement at short shear spans in EN 1992" published in The Structural Engineer Vol. 85 No.23/24 in December 2007 which demonstrates that there are serious misgivings surrounding the use of this method which the authors claim to be fundamentally flawed.

Therefore, this method has not been implemented in Tekla Structural Designer.

Footnotes

Minimum area of shear reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2)

The minimum area of shear reinforcement required, $A_{sw,min}$ is given by¹;

$$A_{sw,min} = \text{MAX}[s_l * \rho_{w,min} * b_w, A_{sw,min,u}]$$

where

s_l the spacing of the shear reinforcement along the longitudinal axis of the beam

$A_{sw,min,u}$ the total minimum area of the shear reinforcement calculated from data supplied i.e. maximum spacing across the beam, minimum link diameter and number of legs

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA**;

$$\rho_{w,min} = (0.08 * \sqrt{f_{ck}}) / f_{yk}$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**;

$$\rho_{w,min} = (0.1 * \sqrt{f_{ck}}) / f_{yk}$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.2(5) Eqn (9.4)

Footnotes

Spacing of shear reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2)

The user defined spacing limits (as specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Beam > Link Settings**) are considered in addition to the following EC2 or NA recommendations.

For design in accordance with **UK NA, EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA** and **Swedish NA** the longitudinal spacing, s_l between the legs of shear reinforcement is given by;

$$s_{l,min,u} \leq s_l \leq \text{MIN}[0.75*d, s_{l,max,u}]$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**;

$$s_{l,min,u} \leq s_l \leq \text{MIN}[0.6*h', s_{l,max,u}]$$

where

$s_{l,max,u}$ the maximum longitudinal spacing specified
=

$s_{l,min,u}$ the minimum longitudinal spacing specified
=

h' the distance between the centres of gravity of top and bottom reinforcement

If compression reinforcement is required for bending the longitudinal spacing, s_l between the legs of shear reinforcement is given by;

$$s_{l,min,u} \leq s_l \leq \text{MIN}\{\text{MIN}[s_{l,max,code}, 15*\Phi_{comp}], s_{l,max,u}\}$$

where

Φ_{comp} the minimum diameter of the compression reinforcement
=

The transverse spacing, s_t between the legs of shear reinforcement is given by;

$$s_t \leq \text{MIN}[s_{t,\text{max,code}}, s_{t,\text{max,u}}]$$

where

$s_{t,\text{max,u}}$ the maximum link leg spacing across the beam specified by the user =

$s_{t,\text{max,code}}$ an NDP for the maximum code allowed leg spacing across beam =

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA Finnish NA and Swedish NA**

$$s_{t,\text{max,code}} = \text{MIN} [0.75*d, 600 \text{ mm}]$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**

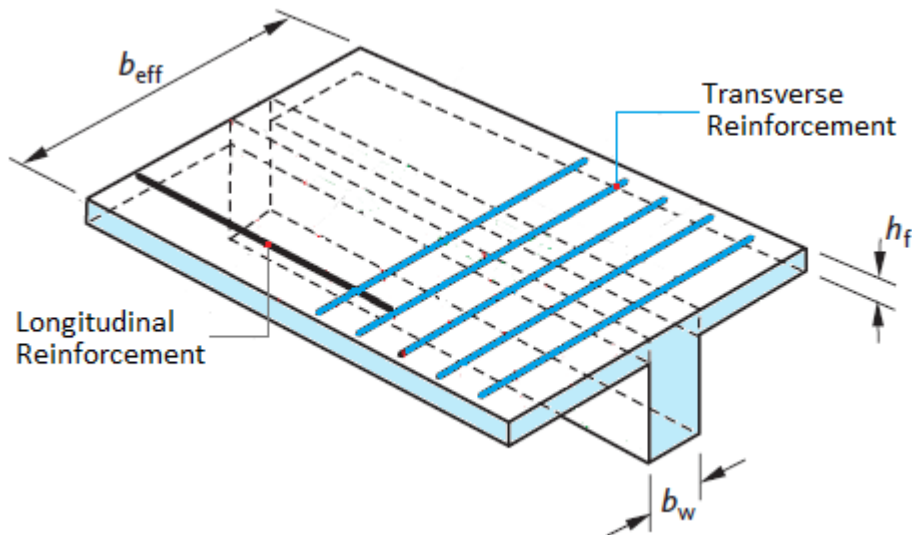
$$s_{t,\text{max,code}} = \text{MIN}[h', 600 \text{ mm}]$$

where

h' the distance between the centres of gravity of top and bottom reinforcement

Shear between flanges and web of flanged beams (concrete beam: EC2)

The shear strength of the interface between the flanges and the web of a flanged beam is checked and, if necessary, transverse reinforcement is provided as shown in the diagram below.¹



The calculations for the transverse reinforcement are as follows:

The lever arm at the point of maximum sagging moment is given by;

$$z = 0.5 \cdot d \cdot [1 + (1 - 2 \cdot K / (\eta \cdot \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}]$$

where

$$K = M_{Ed, \max} / (f_{ck} \cdot b_{eff} \cdot d^2)$$

$M_{Ed, \max}$ = the maximum sagging (+ve) design moment on the beam

The depth of the compression block, d_c is then given by;

$$d_c = 2 \cdot (d - z)$$

The following calculations are then carried out on each side, i of the beam.

IF $d_c \leq h_{fi, \min}$ THEN the stress block is completely within the flange.

where

$h_{fi, \min}$ = the minimum depth of the flange on each side of the beam

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2001 Section 6.2.4

$$= \text{MIN}(h_{f1}, h_{f2})$$

The force in the flange on side i of the beam, F_i is then given by;

$$F_i = \eta * f_{cd} * d_c * b_{eff,i}$$

where

$$b_{eff,i} = \text{the width of the flange on side } i \text{ of the beam}$$

IF $d_c > h_{fi,min}$ THEN the force in the flange on side i of the beam, F_i is then given by;

$$F_i = \eta * f_{cd} * h_{fi} * b_{eff,i}$$

where

$$h_{fi} = \text{the depth of the flange on side } i \text{ of the beam}$$

The maximum rate of change of the bending moment for all load combinations in the sagging region of the beam, $(dM_{Ed}/dx)_{max}$ (the moment gradient) is then determined.

The moment gradient is then given by;

$$dM_{Ed}/dx = \text{ABS}(M_{Ed,end-0})/\text{interval length}$$

The length over which the flange force is transferred to the web, L_T is given by;

$$L_T = M_{Ed,+max}/(dM_{Ed}/dx)_{max}$$

The design shear stress on side i of the web is then given by;

$$v_{Edi} = F_i/(h_{fi} * L_T)$$

The limiting value of the shear stress, $v_{Ed,lim}$ is given by;

$$v_{Ed,lim} = k * f_{ctd}$$

where

$$k = \text{an NDP factor}$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

IF $v_{Edi} \leq v_{Ed,lim}$ THEN no additional transverse reinforcement is required

ELSE

$$A_{sfi,reqd} = ((v_{Edi} * h_{fi} / f_{yd}) / \cot \theta_{fi}) * 1000 \quad \text{mm}^2 \text{ per metre length of beam}$$

The result for the beam is then given by;

$$A_{sfi,reqd} = \text{MAX}(A_{sf1,reqd}, A_{sf2,reqd})$$

where

$$\theta_{fi} = \text{MIN}\{\theta_{fmax}, \text{MAX}(0.5 * \sin^{-1}(2 * v_{Edi} / (v * f_{cd})), \theta_{fmin})\}$$

$$v = \text{an NDP value}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\theta_{fmax} &= \text{an NDP value} \\ \theta_{fmin} &= \text{an NDP value}\end{aligned}$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\begin{aligned}v &= 0.6 \cdot (1 - (f_{ck}/250)) \\ \theta_{fmax} &= \tan^{-1}(1) \\ \theta_{fmin} &= \tan^{-1}(0.5)\end{aligned}$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA;**

$$\begin{aligned}v &= 0.6 \cdot (1 - (f_{ck}/250)) \\ \theta_{fmax} &= \tan^{-1}(1) \\ \theta_{fmin} &= \tan^{-1}(0.4)\end{aligned}$$

Footnotes

Additional tension reinforcement (concrete beam: EC2)

In EN 1992-1-1:2004, the method of designing for vertical shear is based on a truss analogy with a diagonal strut acting at an angle θ . This strut action means that there must be a tension force developed in the longitudinal reinforcement which is additional to that arising from bending action.

To resist this tension force, an area of reinforcement additional to that required to resist bending is required.

The total area of longitudinal tension reinforcement in each of the regions then becomes;

$$A_{st,reqd,i} = A_{st,reqd,i} + A_{swa,reqd,i}$$

where

$A_{st,reqd,i}$ = the area of longitudinal reinforcement required to resist bending as appropriate in region "i"

$A_{swa,reqd,i}$ = the area of longitudinal reinforcement required to resist the additional tension force from vertical shear in region "i"

Design values of shear resistance and torsional resistance moment (concrete beam: EC2)

The design value of the shear resistance of a concrete section with vertical shear reinforcement, $V_{Rd,max}$ is given by;

$$V_{Rd,max} = 0.9 \cdot \alpha_{cw} \cdot b_w \cdot d \cdot v_1 \cdot f_{cwd} / (\cot \theta + \tan \theta)$$

where

$$\theta = \min\{\theta_{max}, \max[0.5 \cdot \sin^{-1}[2 \cdot V_{Ed,max} / (\alpha_{cw} \cdot b_w \cdot 0.9 \cdot d \cdot v_1 \cdot f_{cwd})], \theta_{min}\}$$

where

$$v_{Ed} = V_{Ed,max} / (b_w \cdot d)$$

$$\tau_{Ed} = T_{Ed,max} / (2 \cdot A_k \cdot t_{ef})$$

$$A_k = (h - t_{ef}) \cdot (b_w - t_{ef})$$

$$t_{ef} = \max(A/u, 2 \cdot (h - d_o))$$

$$A = h \cdot b_w$$

$$u = \text{the outer circumference of the cross-section}$$

$$= 2 \cdot (h + b_w)$$

¹: Eqn (3.15) EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)P

²: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Eqn (6.26) with $\tau_{t,i} = f_{ctd}$

d_o the effective depth of the outer layer of longitudinal reinforcement

$V_{Ed,max}$ max. absolute value from all the shear regions
=

$T_{Ed,max}$ max. torsion on the member
=

The maximum design value of the torsional resistance moment, $T_{Rd,max}$ is given by

$$T_{Rd,max} = 2 \cdot v_1 \cdot \alpha_{ccw} \cdot f_{c wd} \cdot A_k \cdot t_{ef} \cdot \sin \theta \cdot \cos \theta$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA;**

$$f_{c wd}^1 = \alpha_{ccw} \cdot \min(f_{ck}, 50) / \gamma_c$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$f_{c wd} = \alpha_{ccw} \cdot f_{ck} / \gamma_c$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.0$$

¹: Eqn (3.15) EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)P

²: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Eqn (6.26) with $\tau_{t,i} = f_{ctd}$

$$\gamma_c \quad 1.5$$

$$=$$

$$\gamma_1 \quad 0.6 \cdot (1 - f_{ck}/250)$$

$$=$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\alpha_{ccw} \quad 1.0$$

$$=$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA;**

$$\alpha_{ccw} \quad 0.85$$

$$=$$

The design value of the torsional resistance moment of a concrete section with no shear reinforcement, $T_{Rd,c}$ is given by²;

$$T_{Rd,c} \quad 2 \cdot A_k \cdot t_{ef} \cdot f_{ctd}$$

$$=$$

where

$$f_{ctd} \quad \text{the design tensile strength of the concrete}$$

$$=$$

$$\alpha_{ct} \cdot f_{ctk,0.05} / \gamma_c$$

$$=$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\alpha_{ct} \quad 1.0$$

¹: Eqn (3.15) EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)P

²: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Eqn (6.26) with $\tau_{t,i} = f_{ctd}$

$$\gamma_c = 1.5$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**;

$$\alpha_{ct} = 0.85$$

$$\gamma_c = 1.5$$

If the maximum torsional moment acting on the beam, $T_{Ed,max}$ is less than the ignorable torque limit then no further calculations are necessary.

Otherwise:

$$\text{If } (T_{Ed,max,i}/T_{Rd,max}) + (V_{Ed,max,i}/V_{Rd,max}) \leq 1.0$$

then the torsion design process can proceed.

ELSE the torsion design FAILS since the section size is inadequate for torsion.

¹: Eqn (3.15) EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)P

²: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Eqn (6.26) with $\tau_{t,i} = f_{ctd}$

Footnotes

Additional reinforcement for torsion (concrete beam: EC2)

The design value of the shear resistance of a concrete section with no shear reinforcement, $V_{Rd,c}$ is given by;¹

$$V_{Rd,c} = v_{min} * b_w * d$$

¹: The design value of the shear resistance is calculated ignoring the longitudinal reinforcement as it is not known if this reinforcement is adequately anchored beyond the point under consideration. This is a conservative approach.

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\begin{aligned} C_{Rd,c} &= 0.18/\gamma_c \\ \gamma_c &= 1.5 \\ V_{min} &= 0.035 \cdot k^{1.5} \cdot f_{ck}^{0.5} \\ \text{where} \\ k &= \text{MIN}(1 + \sqrt{(200/d)}, 2.0) \end{aligned}$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA;**

$$\begin{aligned} C_{Rd,c} &= 0.15/\gamma_c \\ \gamma_c &= 1.5 \\ V_{min} &= 0.035 \cdot k^{(2/3)} \cdot \min(f_{ck}, 65 \text{ N/mm}^2)^{0.5} \\ \text{where} \\ k &= \text{MIN}(1 + \sqrt{(200/d)}, 2.0) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{If } (T_{Ed,max}/T_{Rd,c}) + (V_{Ed,max}/V_{Rd,c}) \leq 1.0$$

THEN no additional longitudinal reinforcement for torsion is required.

$$\text{IF } (T_{Ed,max}/T_{Rd,c}) + (V_{Ed,max}/V_{Rd,c}) > 1.0$$

THEN additional longitudinal reinforcement for torsion, $A_{sIT,reqd}$ is required in some or all regions.

The additional longitudinal reinforcement is given by;

$$A_{sIT,reqd} = (T_{Ed} \cdot u_k \cdot \cot\theta) / (2 \cdot A_k \cdot f_{yd})$$

where

$$u_k = 2 \cdot ((h - t_{ef}) + (b_w - t_{ef}))$$

This reinforcement is **in addition** to that required for bending and tension arising from vertical shear and it is distributed in each of the four faces of the beam in proportion to the length of the face of the cross-section.

The area of the additional link reinforcement that is required to resist torsion is given by;

¹: The design value of the shear resistance is calculated ignoring the longitudinal reinforcement as it is not known if this reinforcement is adequately anchored beyond the point under consideration. This is a conservative approach.

$$A_{swt}/s = \frac{(T_{Ed})}{(2 * A_k * 0.9 * f_{ywd} * \cot\theta)} \text{ per leg}$$

¹: The design value of the shear resistance is calculated ignoring the longitudinal reinforcement as it is not known if this reinforcement is adequately anchored beyond the point under consideration. This is a conservative approach.

Footnotes

Deflection check (concrete beam and slab: EC2)

The deflection of reinforced concrete beams is not directly calculated and the serviceability of the beam is measured by comparing the calculated limiting span/effective depth ratio L/d to the maximum allowable values as given by;¹

IF ρ	$\leq$	ρ_0
$(L/d)_{max}$	$=$	$K_{ss} * f_1 * f_2 * (11 + 1.5 * (f_{ck})^{1/2} * (\rho_0 / \rho) + 3.2 * (f_{ck})^{1/2} * ((\rho_0 / \rho) - 1)^{3/2}) * (500 * A_{st,prov} / (f_{yk} * A_{st,reqd}))$
IF ρ	$>$	ρ_0
$(L/d)_{max}$	$=$	$K_{ss} * f_1 * f_2 * (11 + 1.5 * (f_{ck})^{1/2} * (\rho_0 / (\rho - \rho')) + (1/12) * (f_{ck})^{1/2} * (\rho' / \rho_0)^{1/2}) * (500 * A_{st,prov} / (f_{yk} * A_{st,reqd}))$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.4.2

²: This definition of effective length will return conservative results when the width of the support is greater than the depth of the beam - see EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.3.2.2(1)

³: EN 1992-1-1:2004 is silent on the recommended value to use therefore adopt 1.5 since if f_3 is greater than 1.5 no benefit arises.

⁴: For Irish NA refer to Table NA.3 and for others refer to Table NA.5

where		
ρ	=	the designed tension reinforcement ratio at mid-span (or at support for cantilevers) required to resist bending
	=	$A_{st,reqd} / (b_w * d)$ for rectangular beams
	=	$A_{st,reqd} / (b_{eff} * d)$ for flanged beams
ρ'	=	the designed compression reinforcement ratio at mid-span (or at support for cantilevers) required to resist bending
	=	$A_{s2,reqd} / (b_w * d)$ for rectangular beams
	=	$A_{s2,reqd} / (b_{eff} * d)$ for flanged beams
$A_{st,reqd}$	=	the designed area of tension reinforcement at mid-span (or at support for cantilevers) required to resist bending
$A_{st,prov}$	=	MIN(the area of tension reinforcement provided at mid-span (or at support for cantilevers), $f_3 * A_{st,reqd}$)
$A_{s2,reqd}$	=	the designed area of compression reinforcement at mid-span (or at support for cantilevers) required to resist bending
f_1	=	1.0 for rectangular beams

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.4.2

²: This definition of effective length will return conservative results when the width of the support is greater than the depth of the beam - see EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.3.2.2(1)

³: EN 1992-1-1:2004 is silent on the recommended value to use therefore adopt 1.5 since if f_3 is greater than 1.5 no benefit arises.

⁴: For Irish NA refer to Table NA.3 and for others refer to Table NA.5

	=	1.0 for flanged beams with $b_{eff}/b_w \leq 3.0$
	=	1.8 for flanged beams with $b_{eff}/b_w > 3.0$
f_2	=	1.0 IF $L_{eff} \leq 7$ m
	=	$7/L_{eff}$ IF $L_{eff} > 7$ m with L_{eff} in metre units
L_{eff}	=	the length of the beam between the centre of its supports ²
f_3	=	an NDP factor as given below
K_{ss}	=	the structural system factor which is an NDP and is given below
For design in accordance with UK NA , as per Table NA.5 Note 6 the absolute value of span/depth may not exceed 40K.		
For design in accordance with EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA , the NDP value of f_3 is given by ³ ;		
f_3	=	1.5
For design in accordance with UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA the NDP value of f_3 is given by ⁴ ;		
f_3	=	1.5
For design in accordance with UK NA, EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA the NDP value of K_{ss} is given by the following table:		

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.4.2

²: This definition of effective length will return conservative results when the width of the support is greater than the depth of the beam - see EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.3.2.2(1)

³: EN 1992-1-1:2004 is silent on the recommended value to use therefore adopt 1.5 since if f_3 is greater than 1.5 no benefit arises.

⁴: For Irish NA refer to Table NA.3 and for others refer to Table NA.5

Span Detail	LH End Fixity	RH End Fixity	K_{ss}
LH End Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.3
	Fixed	Pinned	1.0
	Pinned	Fixed	1.3
	Pinned	Pinned	1.0
Internal Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.5
	Fixed	Pinned	1.3
	Pinned	Fixed	1.3
	Pinned	Pinned	1.0
RH End Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.3
	Fixed	Pinned	1.3
	Pinned	Fixed	1.0
	Pinned	Pinned	1.0
Cantilever			0.4

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA** the NDP value of K_{ss} is given by the following table;

Span Detail	LH End Fixity	RH End Fixity	K_{ss}
LH End Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.0
	Fixed	Pinned	0.8
	Pinned	Fixed	1.0
	Pinned	Pinned	0.8
Internal Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.2
	Fixed	Pinned	1.0
	Pinned	Fixed	1.0
	Pinned	Pinned	0.8
RH End Span	Fixed	Fixed	1.0
	Fixed	Pinned	1.0
	Pinned	Fixed	0.8
	Pinned	Pinned	0.8
Cantilever			0.3

Footnotes

3.3 Concrete column design to EC2

The topics in this section describe how the software applies EN 1992-1-1:2004 (Ref. 1) (page 244) to the design of reinforced concrete columns.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Limitations \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 174\)](#)
- [Cover to Reinforcement \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 174\)](#)
- [Design parameters for longitudinal bars \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 175\)](#)
- [Ultimate axial load limit \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 178\)](#)
- [Effective length calculations \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 179\)](#)
- [Column stack classification \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 182\)](#)
- [Overview of second order effects \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 184\)](#)
- [Design moment calculations \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 187\)](#)
- [Design for combined axial and bending \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 189\)](#)
- [Design parameters for shear \(concrete column: EC2\) \(page 190\)](#)

Limitations (concrete column: EC2)

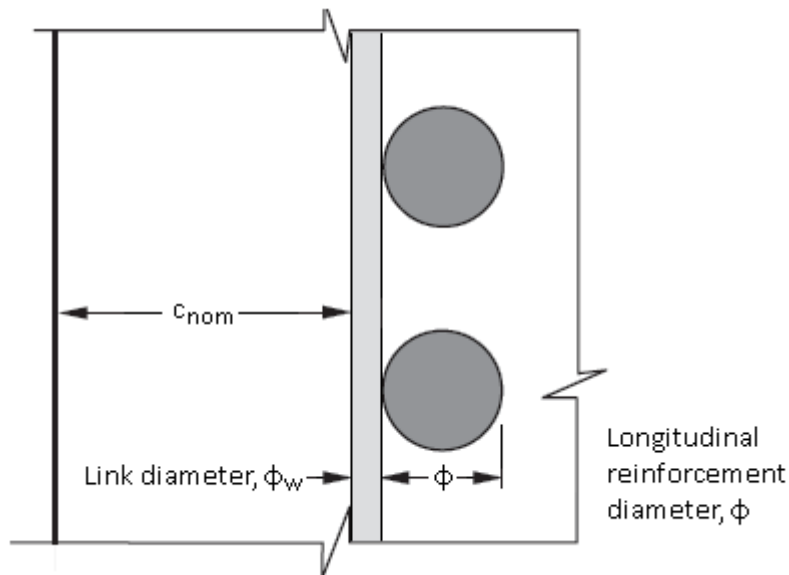
The longitudinal and transverse reinforcement requirements of clause 9.5 are applied to all columns, including columns where the larger dimension is greater than 4 times the smaller dimension - this is conservative.

The following general exclusions also apply:

- Seismic design,
- Consideration of fire resistance. [You are however given full control of the minimum cover dimension to the reinforcement and are therefore able to take due account of fire resistance requirements.],
- Chamfers,
- Multi-stack reinforcement lifts.

Cover to Reinforcement (concrete column: EC2)

The nominal concrete cover is the distance between the surface of the reinforcement closest to the nearest concrete surface (including links and surface reinforcement where relevant) and the nearest concrete surface.



You are required to set a minimum value for the nominal cover, $c_{nom,u}$, for each column in the column properties.

These values are then checked against the nominal limiting cover, $c_{nom,lim}$ which depends on the diameter of the reinforcement plus an allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} (specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Column > General Parameters**).

Generally, the allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} is a NDP.¹ The recommended value is 10mm, but under strict controls it can be reduced to 5mm.

If $c_{nom,u} < c_{nom,lim}$ then a warning is displayed in the calculations.

Footnotes

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 cl 4.4.1.3 (1)P

Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete column: EC2)

For some of the longitudinal reinforcement design parameters, additional user defined limits can be applied - where this is the case minimum and maximum values are specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Column > Reinforcement Layout**. These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Minimum Longitudinal Bar Diameter

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA and Swedish NA**;

$$\varphi_{\text{long,min}} = 8\text{mm}$$

For design in accordance with **Malaysian NA and Norwegian NA**;

$$\varphi_{\text{long,min}} = 10\text{mm}$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA and Singapore NA**;

$$\varphi_{\text{long,min}} = 12\text{mm}$$

Minimum Longitudinal Bar Spacing

For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA¹, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA**;

$$s_{\text{cl,min}} \geq \text{MAX[maximum longitudinal bar diameter, 20mm, } d_g + 5\text{mm]}$$

For design to **Finnish NA**;

$$s_{\text{cl,min}} \geq \text{MAX[maximum longitudinal bar diameter, 20mm, } d_g + 3\text{mm]}$$

For design to **Norwegian NA**;

$$s_{\text{cl,min}} \geq \text{MAX[2*maximum longitudinal bar diameter, 20mm, } d_g + 5\text{mm]}$$

Where d_g is the maximum aggregate size.

Maximum Longitudinal Bar Spacing

You are given control over this value by specifying an upper limit in Design Settings > Column > Reinforcement Layout.

Minimum Longitudinal Total Steel Area

If $N_{\text{Ed}} \geq 0$ (i.e. compression)

For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA², Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Finnish NA**;

$$A_{\text{sl,min}} = \text{MAX[(0.1 * } N_{\text{Ed}}) / f_{\text{yd}}, 0.2\% * \text{ column area]}$$

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2

² EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.5.2(2)

For design to **Norwegian NA**;

$$A_{sl,min} = \text{MAX} [\text{MIN}(\{0.2 \cdot A_c \cdot f_{cd}\} / f_{yd}, 0.5 \cdot N_{Ed} / f_{yd}), 1.0\% \cdot \text{column area}]$$

For design to **Swedish NA**;

$$A_{sl,min} = 0.2\% \cdot \text{column area}$$

Else

$$A_{sl,min} = 0.45\% \cdot \text{column area}$$

NOTE It has been decided that in the tension case, in the absence of clear guidance by EC2, it is responsible and conservative to adopt the 0.45% used by BS8110.

Maximum Longitudinal Total Steel Area

For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA³, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA**;

$$A_{sl,max} = 4\% \cdot \text{column area (8\% in lap regions)}$$

For design to **Finnish NA**;

$$A_{sl,max} = 6\% \cdot \text{column area (12\% in lap regions)}$$

For design to **Norwegian NA**;

$$A_{sl,max} = 4\% \cdot \text{net concrete area (8\% in lap regions)}$$

For design to **Swedish NA**;

Maximum area of reinforcement is not limited

Long Term Compressive Strength Factor

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Norwegian NA⁴**;

$$\alpha_{cc} = 0.85$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations and Swedish NA**;

$$\alpha_{cc} = 1.0$$

Design Concrete Compressive Strength for Shear

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc} \cdot f_{ck} / \gamma_C$$

For design to ⁵ **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**;

$$\gamma_C = 1.50$$

³ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.5.2(3)

⁴ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)

⁵ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)

Footnotes

Ultimate axial load limit (concrete column: EC2)

This limit is when the section is under pure compression (i.e. no moment is applied). It is observed that for non-symmetric arrangements, applying a small moment in one direction may increase the maximum axial load that can be applied to a section because the peak of the N-M interaction diagram is shifted away from the N-axis (i.e. the zero moment line). Checking that the axial load does not exceed the ultimate axial load limit of the section ensures that there is always a positive moment limit and a negative moment limit for the applied axial load for the section.

The ultimate axial load limit of the section, assuming a rectangular stress distribution, is calculated from:

$$N_{\max} = (RF * A_c * f_{cd} * \eta) + \sum(A_{s,i} * f_{s,i})$$

Given that,

$$A_c = A - \sum A_{s,i}$$

$$f_{s,i} = \epsilon_c * E_{s,i}$$

Where

RF is the concrete design reduction factor, (this is a fixed value of 0.9 which cannot be changed)

A is the overall area of the section,

A_c is the area of concrete in the section,

$A_{s,i}$ is the area of bar i ,

f_{cd} is the design compressive strength of the concrete,

η is a reduction factor for the design compressive strength for high strength concrete for the rectangular stress distribution,

ϵ_c is the strain in the concrete at reaching the maximum strength,

$f_{s,i}$ is the stress in bar i when the concrete reaches the maximum strength,

$E_{s,i}$ is the modulus of elasticity of the steel used in bar i .

NOTE The concrete design reduction factor RF originates from EC2 section 3.1.7(3): "Note: If the width of the compression zone decreases in the direction of the extreme compression fibre, the value η_{fcd} should be reduced by 10%"

In Tekla Structural Designer the RF factor is applied in both the axial-moment interaction check and the ultimate axial resistance check

(even though there is no extreme compression fibre in this latter calculation) so that the ultimate axial resistance matches the peak position of the interaction diagram - its inclusion creates a conservative result.

Effective length calculations (concrete column: EC2)

Clear Height

The clear height is the clear dimension between the restraining beams at the bottom of the stack and the restraining beams at the top of the stack. The clear height may be different in each direction.

If, at an end of the stack, no effective beams or flat slab to include are found, then the clear height includes the stack beyond this restraint, and the same rules apply for finding the end of the clear height at the end of the next stack (and so on).

Effective Length

The effective length, l_0 is calculated automatically - you also have the ability to override the calculated value.

From EC2, cl. 5.8.3.2, the equations for calculating the effective length are as follows.

For stacks designated as "braced", the effective length is given by¹:

$$l_0 = 0.5 * l * \sqrt{(1 + (k_1 / (0.45 + k_1))) * (1 + (k_2 / (0.45 + k_2)))}$$

In addition Tekla Structural Designer imposes the following limits for stacks that are designated as braced:

$$5 \leq l_0 / l \leq 1$$

For stacks designated as "bracing", the effective length is the larger of¹:

$$l_0 = l * \sqrt{(1 + (10 * k_1 * k_2 / (k_1 + k_2)))}$$

Or

$$l_0 = l * (1 + (k_1 / (1 + k_1))) * (1 + (k_2 / (1 + k_2)))$$

Where

k_1 and k_2 are the relative flexibilities of rotational restraints at ends 1 and 2 respectively, in the direction under consideration. Which way the ends are numbered is irrelevant to the result. The program uses the bottom end of the stack as end 1 and the top end as end 2.

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.8.3.2(3)

The value of k , which may refer to either k_1 or k_2 depending on which end of the stack is being examined, is defined by¹:

$$k = (\theta / M) * (E * I / l)$$

Where

M is the moment applied to the restraining members by the buckling member or members,

θ is the rotation of the joint at the end of the stack considered for the bending moment M ,

$(E * I / l)$ is the bending stiffness of the compression member or members considered to be buckling.

It is recommended to take " θ / M " for the beams as " $l / (2 * E * I)$ ".

The standard approximation² for " θ / M " is between " $l / (4 * E * I)$ " and " $l / (3 * E * I)$ ", so to allow for cracking the value is increased. Also, " $E * I / l$ " is the sum of the stiffness of column stacks joining at the connection.

The above equation then becomes:

$$k = \sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} / \sum(2 * E * I / l)_{\text{beams}}$$

If there are any adjacent stacks beyond the joint at the end of the restrained length under consideration, then it must be considered whether these adjacent stacks are likely to contribute to the deflection or restrain it. If the stiffness are similar then the stiffness of the adjacent stacks can be ignored, and the guidance in PD6687 suggests that this range of similarity of stiffness can be taken as 15% above or below the stiffness of the stack being designed. Therefore:

If

$$1.85 \leq \sum((E * I / l)_{\text{stacks beyond this joint}}) / (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}} \leq 1.15$$

Then

$$\sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} = (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}}$$

Else

$$\sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} = (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}} + \sum(E * I / l)_{\text{stacks beyond this joint}}$$

These stacks can be part of the same column length or another column length.

Note that as the restrained length may be multiple stacks, " $E * I$ " for this stack are the values for the stack being designed, and l is the restrained length. For the stacks beyond the restraint, " $E * I$ " are the values for the stack attached to the restraint, and l is the restrained length that the stack exists within.

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.8.3.2(3)

² PD 6687-1:2010 Section 2.11.2

Any beams framing into the end of the stack within 45 degrees of the axis being considered are said to be restraining beams for the stack in that direction.

There is a lower limit ³ for the value of k:

$$k \geq 0.1$$

Additionally, Tekla Structural Designer imposes an upper limit:

$$k \leq 20$$

For bracing stacks, a warning is displayed when the calculated value of k exceeds this limit.

Fixed Column Base

$k = 0.1$ for fixed bases in Tekla Structural Designer. There is no clear guidance in EC2, but the Concrete Centre guidance suggests that this is suitable.

NOTE If you have set the bottom of the column to be "fixed" but the support as "pinned". The program will always assume that the support is fixed and therefore only ever consider the fixity applied to the column.

Pinned Column End

In any situation where the end of a column anywhere in the structure is pinned, $k = 20$.

No Effective Beams Found

If no effective beams are found to restrain the end of the stack in the direction in question, then the program will consider whether there is a flat slab restraining the stack at this end. If a flat slab is found it will either be considered as a restraint, or not, in each direction at each end of the stack - this is controlled by checking the option Use slab for stiffness calculation... located as a Stiffness setting in the column properties. If there are no effective beams and there is no flat slab (or any flat slab is not to be considered), then the program looks for the far end of the stack on the other side of the joint, and look at the restraints there, and so on until a restraint with an effective beam or flat slab to be considered is found.

If the stack is restrained by a flat slab, then the slab will be considered to act as a beam in this direction - note that it is one beam in the direction and NOT a beam on each side of the column.

If the stack is an end stack and there are no supports, beams or flat slabs considered to restrain the stack at this end in the direction, the end is therefore free in this direction and $k = 20$.

Footnotes

³ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 5.8.3.2(3)

Column stack classification (concrete column: EC2)

Slenderness ratio

The slenderness ratio, λ of the restrained length about each axis is calculated as follows:

$$\lambda = l_0 / i = l_0 / \sqrt{I / A}$$

Where

l_0 is the effective height of the stack,

i is the radius of gyration of the stack section about the axis under consideration,

I is the second moment of area of the stack section about the axis,

A is the cross-sectional area of the stack section.

The slenderness ratio λ is then checked against the limiting slenderness ratio λ_{lim} in each direction. If the slenderness is less than this limit, then the member is short and slenderness effects are ignored, otherwise it is slender.

Limiting slenderness ratio

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20 * A * B * C / \sqrt{n}$$

Where

$$A = 1 / (1 + (0.2 * \varphi_{ef})) \geq 0.7$$

$$B = \sqrt{1 + (2 * \omega)} \geq 1.1$$

$$C = 1.7 - r_m$$

Where

φ_{ef} is the effective creep ratio,

$$\omega = A_s * f_{yd} / (A_c * f_{cd}),$$

f_{yd} is the design yield strength of the reinforcement,

f_{cd} is the design compressive strength of the concrete,

A_s is the total area of longitudinal reinforcement,

$$n = N_{Ed} / (A_c * f_{cd}),$$

N_{Ed} is the design axial force between restrained floor levels in this direction,

$$r_m = M_{1,1} / M_{2,1}$$

$M_{1,1}$ and $M_{2,1}$ are the first order moments at the ends of the stack about the axis being considered, with $|M_{2,1}| \geq |M_{1,1}|$.

If $M_{1,1}$ and $M_{2,1}$ cause tension in the same side of the stack then r_m is positive and $C \leq 1.7$. If the converse is true then the stack is in double curvature, and it follows that r_m is negative and $C > 1.7$.

For braced stacks in which the first order moments arise only from transverse loads (lateral loading is significant) or imperfections ($M_{imp,1} > |M_{2,1}|$), C must be taken as 0.7,

For

bracing stacks, C must be taken as 0.7,

For restrained lengths encompassing more than one stack, C is taken as 0.7.

The effective creep ratio, φ_{ef} , is derived as follows:

$$f_{cm} = f_{ck} + 8 \text{ (N/mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$h_0 = 2 * A_g / u$$

Where

u is the section perimeter in contact with the atmosphere (assumed to be the full section perimeter),

A_g is the gross section area.

$$\alpha_1 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.7}$$

$$\alpha_2 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.2}$$

$$\alpha_3 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.5}$$

If $f_{cm} \leq 35 \text{ N/mm}^2$,

$$\beta_H = (1.5 * (1 + (1.2 * RH))^{18} * h_0) + 250 \leq 1500$$

Else,

$$\beta_H = (1.5 * (1 + (1.2 * RH))^{18} * h_0) + (250 * \alpha_3) \leq 1500 * \alpha_3$$

Where

RH is the relative humidity, which is set under Design parameters in the column properties.

$$\beta_c(t, t_0) = ((t - t_0) / (\beta_H + t - t_0))^{0.3}$$

$$\beta_{t0} = 1 / (0.1 + t_0^{0.2})$$

$$\beta_{fcm} = 16.8 / \sqrt{f_{cm}}$$

Where

t_0 is the age of column loading and defaults to 14 days, if required it can be changed under Design parameters in the column properties.

If $f_{cm} \leq 35 \text{ N/mm}^2$,

$$\varphi_{RH} = 1 + ((1 - (RH / 100)) / (0.1 * h_0^{1/3}))$$

Else,

$$\varphi_{RH} = (1 + (((1 - (RH / 100)) / (0.1 * h_0^{1/3})) * \alpha_1)) * \alpha_2$$

Then,

$$\varphi_0 = \varphi_{RH} * \beta_{fcm} * \beta_{t0}$$

$$\varphi(\infty, t_0) = \varphi_0 * \beta_c(\infty, t_0)$$

If $\varphi(\infty, t_0) \leq 2$ and $\lambda < 75$ and $M_{max.1} / N_{Ed} \geq h$ and $\omega \geq 0.25$,

$$\varphi_{ef} = 0$$

Else

$$\varphi_{ef} = \varphi(\infty, t_0) * R_{PL}$$

Where

$M_{max.1}$ is the largest first order moment in the restrained length in this direction,

N_{Ed} is the design axial force in the restrained length in this direction,

R_{PL} is the permanent load ratio.

You are required to supply a value for the permanent load ratio which is located under Design parameters in the column properties. A default of 0.65 has been assumed, but you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

Tekla Structural Designer assumes that t_∞ (t-infinity) is equal to 70 years (25550 days).

Pre-selection of Bracing Contribution

The significant parameter within the slenderness criteria is a choice of how a wall, or column, is contributing to the stability of the structure.

In-plane direction, a wall is usually considered to be a bracing member. Out-of-plane direction, a wall is usually considered to be braced by other stabilizing members. These are the default settings but can be edited.

Overview of second order effects (concrete column: EC2)

For 'isolated' columns and walls, EN1992-1-1 (EC2) allows for second order effects and member imperfections in a number of ways,

- It specifies a minimum level of member imperfection along with a conservative value - see Clause 5.2 (7).
- It provides for the additional moment due to slenderness (member buckling) using one of two methods. One method (the (Nominal) Stiffness

Method) increases the first-order moments in the column using an amplifier based on the elastic critical buckling load of the member - see Clause 5.8.7.3. The second method (the (Nominal) Curvature Method) calculates the 'second-order' moment directly based on an adjustment to the maximum predicted curvature that the column section can achieve at failure in bending - see Clause 5.8.8.

- The impact of the slenderness is increased or decreased depending upon the effective length factor for the member. For braced members this will be ≤ 1.0 and for unbraced (bracing) members it will be ≥ 1.0 see Clause 5.8.3.2.
- Finally (and unrelated to second order effects), EC2 also requires consideration of a minimum moment based on the likelihood that the axial load cannot be fully concentric, see Clause 6.1 (4). The analysis moment (including the added effects of imperfection and second order effects) should not be less than this value.

Member imperfections (Clause 5.2 (7))

The imperfection moment is calculated using the eccentricity, $e_i = l_0/400$, and it is conservatively assumed that it increases the first-order moments irrespective of sign.

The imperfection moment is added to the analysis moment and if the member is slender a further second moment is added, if this total is $<$ the 6.1(4) moment then the 6.1(4) moment applies.

In the case of the Stiffness Method the imperfection moment is added before the moment magnifier is applied. It is applied to both braced and bracing columns/walls.

Curvature Method (Clause 5.8.8)

This method is only applied to symmetrical, rectangular and circular sections and is equally applicable to columns and walls. The second-order moment, M_2 ($= N_{Ed} e_2$), is calculated but the resulting design moment is only used if it is less than that calculated from the Stiffness Method. It is applied in the same manner as that for the Stiffness Method to both braced and bracing columns.

Stiffness Method (Clause 5.8.7)

This method is applied to all columns and walls.

For braced columns the second-order moment M_2 is calculated from:

$$M_2 = M_{e,1} \times \pi^2 / (8 \times (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1))$$

Where

$M_{e,1}$ = the maximum first-order moment in the mid-fifth

N_B = the buckling load of the column based on nominal stiffness and the effective length, hence

$$N_B = \pi^2 EI / l_0^2$$

N_{Ed} = the maximum axial force in the design length

When a point of zero shear occurs inside the mid-fifth or does not exist in the member length, the value of M_2 is added algebraically to the first-order moments at the ends but only if this increases the first-order moment. At the mid-fifth position M_2 is always "added" in such a way as to increase the first-order mid-fifth moment.

When a point of zero shear occurs within the member length and is outside the mid-fifth, the second-order moments is taken as the greater of that calculated as above and that calculated as per Clause 5.8.7.3 (4) by multiplying all first-order moments by the amplifier,

$$1/(1 - N_{Ed}/N_B)$$

For bracing columns the second-order moments are calculated in the same way as braced columns except that in the determination of the amplifier, the buckling load is based on bracing effective lengths. These are greater than $1.0L$ and hence produce more severe amplifiers.

Second-order analysis

When second-order analysis is selected then both braced and bracing columns are treated the same as if first-order analysis were selected. If the second-order analysis is either the amplified forces method or the rigorous method then this approach will double count some of the global $P-\Delta$ effects in columns that are determined as having significant lateral loads. Also, when it is a rigorous second-order analysis there is some double counting of member $P-\delta$ effects in both braced and bracing columns.

Because global second order effects are introduced when second order analysis is selected, it is logical to set all members to "braced" so that only additional effects due to member slenderness are introduced.

Minimum moment (Clause 6.1 (4))

The minimum moment about each axis, M_{min} is calculated from Clause 6.1 (4).

For the specific circumstance of the moments from analysis being $<$ the minimum moment for both axes, design codes generally require that the minimum moment need only be considered acting about one axis at a time. In Tekla Structural Designer the behaviour in this situation is as follows:

- For any section that is not circular or rectangular, the minimum moment is always applied about both axes, the rationale being:
 - We believe the logical intention behind the requirement is that a cross section should be able to resist a minimum moment in every direction. However, if the local X and Y axes of a member are not aligned to the strongest and weakest axes (e.g. for an L-shape section) then applying the minimum in only one of the X or Y directions will not guarantee meeting the intention. Hence we consider applying the moment about both axes together for this contingency is a safe and conservative approach.

- For rectangular (non-square) sections, the minimum moment is applied in the weaker direction.
- For square and circular sections, the minimum moment is applied in the direction with the smaller analysis moment.

Design moment calculations (concrete column: EC2)

For each combination and for each analysis model the end moments in the two local member directions, "1" and "2" are established. From these and the local load profile, the moment at any position and the maximum axial force in the member can be established.

Step 1 - the amplifier

Calculate the "amplifier" due to buckling in each of Direction 1 and Direction 2 from Equ. 5.28 and Equ. 5.30 of EC2 as¹,

$$k_{5.28} = 1 + \pi^2 / (8 * (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1))$$

$$k_{5.30} = 1 + 1 / (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1)$$

Where

$$N_B = \text{the (Euler) buckling load in the appropriate direction}$$

$$= \pi^2 EI / l_o^2$$

$$l_o = \text{the effective length in the appropriate direction which for braced columns will be } \leq 1.0L \text{ and for unbraced columns } \geq 1.0L$$

$$N_{Ed} = \text{the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)}$$

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq \text{zero}$ i.e. tension, $k_{5.28}$ and $k_{5.30}$ are 1.0.

¹: Direction 1 and Direction 2 are referring here to the member local axes

Step 2 - minimum moment

Calculate the minimum moment due to non-concentric axial force in each of the two directions from,

$$M_{\min.1} = |N_{Ed}| * \text{MAX}(h/30, 20)$$

Where

h	=	the major dimension of the column in the appropriate direction
N_{Ed}		the maximum axial force (compression or tension) in the column length under consideration (stack)

Step 3 - imperfection moment

Calculate the "first-order" and "second-order" imperfection moment in Direction 1 and Direction 2 as,

$$M_{imp.1} = N_{Ed} * e_i$$

$$M_{imp.2} = M_{imp.1} * k_{5.28}$$

Where

$$M_{imp.1} = \text{the "first-order" imperfection moment in a given direction}$$

$$M_{imp.2} = \text{the "second-order" imperfection moment in a given direction}$$

$$e_i = \text{the effective length in the appropriate direction divided by 400}$$

$$= l_o / 400$$

$$N_{Ed} = \text{the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)}$$

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq \text{zero}$ i.e. tension, $M_{imp.1}$ and $M_{imp.2}$ are zero.

Step 4 - second-order moment, curvature method

For rectangular and circular sections the second-order moment, $M_{2.curv}$, using the Curvature Method is calculated for each direction.

$$M_{2.curv} = N_{Ed} * e_2$$

Where

$$e_2 = \text{the deflection due to the maximum curvature achievable with the given axial force}$$

$$= (1/r) l_o^2 / c$$

$$N_{Ed} = \text{the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)}$$

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq \text{zero}$ i.e. tension, $M_{2.curv}$ is zero.

Step 5 - second-order moment, stiffness method

For all section shapes, the second-order moment, $M_{2.stiff}$, using the Stiffness Method is calculated in each direction based on the maximum first-order moment in the mid-fifth of the column, $M_{e.1}$, in the appropriate direction.

$$M_{2.stiff} = M_{e.1} * (\pi^2 / (8 * (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1)))$$

Where

$M_{e.1}$ = the maximum absolute moment in the mid-fifth of the column length under consideration (stack) in the appropriate direction

N_{Ed} = the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq \text{zero}$ i.e. tension, $M_{2.stiff}$ is zero.

Step 6 - lateral loading classification

For the current design combination, for each direction using the member analysis routines, check for point(s) of zero shear within the column length. If none exist or are within the mid-fifth of the column length then this design case is designated as having lateral loads that are "not significant". Else the lateral loads are considered as "significant".

Step 7 - design moment at top

Calculate the design moment at the top of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads are "significant", or "not significant".

Step 8 - design moment at bottom

Calculate the design moment at the bottom of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads that are "significant", or "not significant".

Step 9 - design moment in mid-fifth

Calculate the design moment in the mid-fifth of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads that are "significant", or "not significant".

Footnotes

Design for combined axial and bending (concrete column: EC2)

Tekla Structural Designer designs the column for an applied axial force and applied bending about one or both axes of the section. In the case of bi-axial bending, a resultant moment is created for the combination of the applied moments.

$$\sqrt{M_{\text{major}}^2 + M_{\text{minor}}^2} / \sqrt{M_{\text{major,res}}^2 + M_{\text{minor,res}}^2} \leq 1.0$$

Where

M_{major} = Moment about the major axis

M_{minor} = Moment about the minor axis

$M_{\text{major,res}}$ = Moment of resistance about the major axis

$M_{\text{minor,res}}$ = Moment of resistance about the minor axis

Tekla Structural Designer adopts the above approach in preference to the simplified method specified in equation 5.39 of EC2 as it has a wider range of application.

Design parameters for shear (concrete column: EC2)

For some of the shear design parameters, additional user defined limits can be applied - where this is the case minimum and maximum values are specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Column > Reinforcement Layout**. These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Minimum Shear Link Diameter

$$\phi_{w,\text{min}} = \text{MAX}[6\text{mm}, 0.25 * \text{largest longitudinal bar diameter}]$$

Maximum Span Region Shear Link Spacing

- For design to **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA** and **Singapore NA**: ¹

$$\phi_{w,\text{max}} = \text{MIN}[20 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$$

NOTE For UK NA when concrete class > C50/60 there are separate calculations in clause 9.5.3(3). These are not implemented but a warning is displayed in this situation.

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.5.3(3)

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Swedish NA**

$\phi_{w,max} = \text{MIN}[20 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$

- For design to **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA:**

$\phi_{w,max} = \text{MIN}[15 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$

Note that in the **Norwegian NA** this limit is reduced by a factor of 0.6 for strength classes equal or above C55/67.

Support Region Shear Link Spacing

For support regions, the maximum link spacing is reduced by 40%. ²

Long Term Compressive Strength Factor for Shear

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA:** ³

$\alpha_{ccw} = 1.0$

- For design to **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA:**

$\alpha_{ccw} = 0.85$

Design Concrete Compressive Strength for Shear

$f_{c wd}$

- For design to **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA:**

$f_{c wd} = \alpha_{ccw} * \text{MIN}(f_{ck}, 50) / \gamma_C$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$f_{c wd} = \alpha_{ccw} * f_{ck} / \gamma_C$

Factor $C_{Rd,c}$ ⁴

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:**

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18 / \gamma_C$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$C_{Rd,c} = 0.15 / \gamma_C$

Factor k_1 ⁵

² EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.5.3(4)

³ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)

⁴ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(1)

⁵ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(1)

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:**

$$k_1 = 0.15$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$\text{If } \sigma_{cp} \geq 0, \text{ then } k_1 = 0.15, \text{ Else } 0.30$$

Cracked Concrete Reduction Factor, v

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:** ⁶

$$v = 0.6 * (1 - (f_{ck} / 250))$$

Cracked Concrete Reduction Factor, v_1

- For design to **UK NA:** ⁷

$$v_1 = v * (1 - (0.5 * \cos(\alpha)))$$

α is the inclination of links.

Note that links in columns are always assumed to be at 90° to column direction.

Therefore $v_1 = v$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$$v_1 = v$$

Minimum Shear Reinforcement Ratio

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, and Swedish NA:** ⁸

$$\rho_{w,min} = 0.08 * \sqrt{f_{ck}} / f_{yk}$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$\rho_{w,min} = 0.1 * \sqrt{f_{ck}} / f_{yk}$$

Maximum Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:** ⁹

$$\cot(\theta_{max}) = 1$$

$$\theta_{max} = 45^\circ$$

⁶ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(6)

⁷ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(3)

⁸ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.2(5)

⁹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(2)

Minimum Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA:**¹⁰

$$\cot(\theta_{\min}) = 2.5$$

$$\theta_{\min} = 21.8^\circ$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$\text{If } \sigma_t = N_{Ed}/A_c < f_{ctk, 0,05}$$

$$\cot(\theta_{\min}) = 2.5$$

$$\theta_{\min} = 21.8^\circ$$

else

$$\cot(\theta_{\min}) = 1.25$$

$$\theta_{\min} = 38.7^\circ$$

Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **UK NA:** ¹⁰

If $N_{Ed} \geq 0$ i.e. compression

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{cwd}))$$

else

$$\cot(\theta) = 1.25$$

$$\theta = 38.7^\circ$$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{cwd}))$$

- For design to **Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA:**

If $N_{Ed} \geq 0$ i.e. compression

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{cwd}))$$

else

$$\cot(\theta) = 1.00$$

$$\theta = 45^\circ$$

Stress State Factor

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$$\text{If } \sigma_{cp} \leq 0$$

¹⁰ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(2)

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.0$$

else if $0 < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.25 * f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.0 + (\sigma_{cp} / f_{cd})$$

else if $0.25 * f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.5 * f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.25$$

else if $0.5 * f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 2.5 * (1.0 - (\sigma_{cp} / f_{cd}))$$

Minimum Shear Strength

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:** ¹¹

$$v_{min} = 0.035 * k^{1.5} * f_{ck}^{0.5}$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$v_{min} = 0.035 * k^{2/3} * \min(f_{ck}, 0.65)^{0.5}$$

Footnotes

3.4 Concrete wall design to EC2

The topics in this section describe how the software applies EN 1992-1-1:2004 (Ref. 1) (page 244) to the design of reinforced concrete walls.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Limitations \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 195\)](#)
- [Cover to Reinforcement \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 195\)](#)
- [Design Parameters for Vertical Bars \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 195\)](#)
- [Design Parameters for Horizontal Bars \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 198\)](#)
- [Ultimate axial load limit \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 200\)](#)
- [Effective length calculations \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 201\)](#)
- [Wall panel classification \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 203\)](#)
- [Overview of second order effects \(concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 206\)](#)
- [Design moment calculations \(Concrete wall:EC2\) \(page 208\)](#)
- [Design for combined axial and bending \(Concrete wall:EC2\) \(page 211\)](#)

¹¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(1)

- [Design parameters for shear \(Concrete wall: EC2\) \(page 212\)](#)

Limitations (Concrete wall: EC2)

The requirements of clause 9.6 are applied to all walls, irrespective of their length to thickness ratio. (Isolated compression members with a length to thickness ratio less than 4 should be defined as columns rather than walls.)

The following general exclusions also apply:

- Seismic design
- Consideration of fire resistance. (You are however given full control of the minimum cover dimension to the reinforcement and are therefore able to take due account of fire resistance requirements.)
- Multi-stack reinforcement lifts

Cover to Reinforcement (Concrete wall: EC2)

For 1 layer of reinforcement, the vertical bar is on the centre-line of the wall thickness, the face of the horizontal bar is closest to the critical concrete face.

For 2 layers of reinforcement, the horizontal bars are placed outside the vertical bars at each face.

The nominal concrete cover is measured to the face of the horizontal bar or any link/confinement transverse reinforcement that may be present.

You are required to set a minimum value for the nominal cover, c_{nom} , for each wall in the wall properties.

These values are then checked against the nominal limiting cover, $c_{nom,lim}$ which depends on the diameter of the reinforcement plus an allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} (specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Wall > General Parameters**).

Generally, the allowance for deviation, Δc_{dev} is a NDP. The recommended value is 10mm, but under strict controls it can be reduced to 5mm.

If $c_{nom} < c_{nom,lim}$ then a warning is displayed in the calculations.

Footnotes

Design Parameters for Vertical Bars (Concrete wall: EC2)

For some of the vertical bar parameters, additional user defined limits can be applied - where this is the case minimum and maximum values are specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Wall > Reinforcement Layout**. These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

NOTE In the following, the concrete area is the gross area of the general wall, or the gross area of the mid zone if one exists. For the end zone the design criteria for a reinforced concrete column element applies.

Reinforcement area for a wall

There are two NDPs which control the vertical reinforcement area¹

- Limiting minimum ratio of vertical reinforcement area to gross concrete area, $\rho_{v,lim,min}$
- Limiting maximum ratio of vertical reinforcement area to gross concrete area, $\rho_{v,lim,max}$

Total minimum area of vert reinforcement

$$A_{s,min} = \rho_{v,lim,min} * A_{cg}$$

Total maximum area of vert reinforcement

$$A_{s,max} = \rho_{v,lim,max} * A_{cg}$$

Where 2 layers are specified distributed equally to each face, this is a minimum of $A_{s,min} / 2$ placed at each face.

- For design to the **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA** and **Norwegian NA** the recommended values are;

$$\rho_{v,lim,min} = 0.002$$

$$\rho_{v,lim,max} = 0.04$$

- For design to the **Finnish NA** the recommended values are;

$$\rho_{v,lim,min} = 0.002$$

$$\rho_{v,lim,max} = 0.06$$

- For design to the **Swedish NA** the recommended values are;

$$\rho_{v,lim,min} = 0.001$$

$$\rho_{v,lim,max} = 0.04$$

You are given additional control over these values by specifying user limits for the **minimum reinforcement ratio** and **maximum reinforcement ratio** in Design Settings.

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 cl 9.6.2 (1)

Code Requirement cl 9.6.1

For walls subjected to "predominantly out-of-plane bending", the minimum area rules for "slabs" apply if they are more critical than the above, [cl 9.3 and reference to cl 9.2.1.1 (1) (2) and (3)], so an additional check for any value of minor axis bending is applied.

For a wall this check is:

$$A_{s,min} = \max [(2*0.26*f_{ctm}*l_{wp}*d/f_{yk}) , (2*0.0013*l_{wp}*d) , (\rho_{v,min}*A_{cg})]$$

This applies for the general wall length, or the mid zone if it exists.

where

For a general wall panel length,

$$l_{wp} = l_w$$

Gross area of the wall, $A_{cg} = l_w * h_w$

For a mid zone panel length,

$$l_{wp} = l_{mz}$$

Gross area of the mid zone, $A_{cg,mz} = l_{mz} * h_w$

Effective depth of the cross section, d , is the dimension of the extreme concrete compression fibre to the centroid of reinforcement layer on the tension side, which for a wall is the line of the vertical reinforcement.

It does not apply for the end zones, since these are subject to the minimum reinforcement requirements as a column section.

Gross area of each end zone, $A_{cg,ez} = l_{ez} * h_w$

Length of each end zone, l_{ez}

Minimum Vertical Loose Bar Spacing

Clear distance between bars:²

$$s_{cl,min} \geq \max (k_1 * \text{maximum bar diameter}, 20\text{mm}, d_g + k_2)$$

where d_g is the maximum aggregate size.

k_1 and k_2 are NDP values,

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA;**

$$k_1 = 1.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 5 \text{ mm}$$

- For design to **Finnish NA;**

$$k_1 = 1.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 3 \text{ mm}$$

² EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

- For design to **Norwegian NA**;

$$k_1 = 2.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 5 \text{ mm}$$

You are given additional control over the spacing by specifying a **minimum clear spacing** user limit in Design Settings.

Maximum Vertical Loose Bar Spacing

The limiting maximum vertical spacing, $s_{v,lim,max}$ is an NDP.

- For design to the **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**

$$s_{v,lim,max} = \min(3 \cdot h_w, 400 \text{ mm})$$

You are given control over this value by specifying a **maximum centre spacing** user limit in Design Settings.

Footnotes

Design Parameters for Horizontal Bars (Concrete wall: EC2)

For some of the horizontal bar parameters, additional user defined limits can be applied - where this is the case minimum and maximum values are specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Wall > Reinforcement Layout**. These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Reinforcement area for a wall

There are two values that control the horizontal reinforcement area

- Limiting minimum ratio of horizontal reinforcement area to gross concrete area, $\rho_{h,lim,min}$
- Limiting maximum ratio of horizontal reinforcement area to gross concrete area, $\rho_{h,lim,max}$

The minimum area of horizontal reinforcement, $A_{sh,min}$ is an NDP¹,

- For design to the **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Finnish NA** the recommendation is;

$$A_{sh,min} = \max(0.25 \cdot A_{sv,prov}, 0.001 \cdot A_{cg})$$

where

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 cl 9.6.3(1)

$A_{sv,prov}$ = Actual area of vertical reinforcement provided

A_{cg} = Gross area of the concrete wall

- For design to the **Norwegian NA** the recommendation is;

$$A_{sh,min} = \max (0.25 \cdot A_{sv, prov} , 0.3 \cdot A_{cg} \cdot f_{ctm} / f_{yk})$$

- For design to the **Swedish NA** the recommendation is;

$$A_{sh,min} = 0.25 \cdot A_{sv, prov}$$

The **minimum reinforcement ratio** (of horizontal reinforcement area to gross concrete area), which will be the start point for the design, is specified in Design Settings, with the default being 0.002.

Minimum Horizontal Bar Spacing

Clear distance between bars

$$s_{cl,min} \geq \max (k_1 \cdot \text{maximum bar diameter}, 20\text{mm}, d_g + k_2)$$

Where d_g is the maximum aggregate size.

k_1 and k_2 are NDP values,

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$k_1 = 1.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 5 \text{ mm}$$

- For design to **Finnish NA**;

$$k_1 = 1.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 3 \text{ mm}$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA**;

$$k_1 = 2.0, \text{ and } k_2 = 5 \text{ mm}$$

You are given additional control over the spacing by specifying a **minimum clear spacing** user limit in Design Settings.

Maximum Horizontal Bar Spacing

To satisfy the slab condition² if "predominantly out-of-plane bending";

$$\text{Limiting maximum horizontal spacing, } s_{cr,max} = \min (3 \cdot h_w , 400 \text{ mm})$$

You are given control over this value by specifying a **maximum centre spacing** user limit in Design Settings.

Footnotes

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

² EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2

Ultimate axial load limit (Concrete wall: EC2)

This limit is when the section is under pure compression (i.e. no moment is applied). It is observed that for non-symmetric arrangements, applying a small moment in one direction may increase the maximum axial load that can be applied to a section because the peak of the N-M interaction diagram is shifted away from the N-axis (i.e. the zero moment line). Checking that the axial load does not exceed the ultimate axial load limit of the section ensures that there is always a positive moment limit and a negative moment limit for the applied axial load for the section.

The ultimate axial load limit of the section, assuming a rectangular stress distribution, is calculated from:

$$N_{\max} = (RF * A_c * f_{cd} * \eta) + \sum(A_{s,i} * f_{s,i})$$

Given that,

$$A_c = A - \sum A_{s,i}$$

$$f_{s,i} = \epsilon_c * E_{s,i}$$

Where

RF is the concrete design reduction factor, (this is a fixed value of 0.9 which cannot be changed)

A is the overall area of the section,

A_c is the area of concrete in the section,

$A_{s,i}$ is the area of bar i ,

f_{cd} is the design compressive strength of the concrete,

η is a reduction factor for the design compressive strength for high strength concrete for the rectangular stress distribution,

ϵ_c is the strain in the concrete at reaching the maximum strength,

$f_{s,i}$ is the stress in bar i when the concrete reaches the maximum strength,

$E_{s,i}$ is the modulus of elasticity of the steel used in bar i .

NOTE The concrete design reduction factor RF originates from EC2 section 3.1.7(3): "Note: If the width of the compression zone decreases in the direction of the extreme compression fibre, the value η_{fcd} should be reduced by 10%"

In Tekla Structural Designer the RF factor is applied in both the axial-moment interaction check and the ultimate axial resistance check (even though there is no extreme compression fibre in this latter calculation) so that the ultimate axial resistance matches the peak

position of the interaction diagram - its inclusion creates a conservative result.

Effective length calculations (Concrete wall: EC2)

Clear Height

The clear height is the clear dimension between the restraining beams at the bottom of the stack and the restraining beams at the top of the stack. The clear height may be different in each direction.

If, at an end of the stack, no effective beams or flat slab to include are found, then the clear height includes the stack beyond this restraint, and the same rules apply for finding the end of the clear height at the end of the next stack (and so on).

Effective Length

The effective length, l_0 is calculated automatically - you also have the ability to override the calculated value.

From EC2, cl. 5.8.3.2, the equations for calculating the effective length are as follows.

For stacks designated as "braced", the effective length is given by:

$$l_0 = 0.5 * l * \sqrt{(1 + (k_1 / (0.45 + k_1))) * (1 + (k_2 / (0.45 + k_2)))}$$

In addition Tekla Structural Designer imposes the following limits for stacks that are designated as braced:

$$5 \leq l_0 / l \leq 1$$

For stacks designated as "bracing", the effective length is the larger of:

$$l_0 = l * \sqrt{(1 + (10 * k_1 * k_2 / (k_1 + k_2)))}$$

Or

$$l_0 = l * (1 + (k_1 / (1 + k_1))) * (1 + (k_2 / (1 + k_2)))$$

Where

k_1 and k_2 are the relative flexibilities of rotational restraints at ends 1 and 2 respectively, in the direction under consideration. Which way the ends are numbered is irrelevant to the result. The program uses the bottom end of the stack as end 1 and the top end as end 2.

The value of k , which may refer to either k_1 or k_2 depending on which end of the stack is being examined, is defined by:

$$k = (\theta / M) * (E * I / l)$$

Where

M is the moment applied to the restraining members by the buckling member or members,

θ is the rotation of the joint at the end of the stack considered for the bending moment M ,

$(E * I / l)$ is the bending stiffness of the compression member or members considered to be buckling.

It is recommended to take " θ / M " for the beams as " $l / (2 * E * I)$ ".

The standard approximation for " θ / M " is between " $l / (4 * E * I)$ " and " $l / (3 * E * I)$ ", so to allow for cracking the value is increased. Also, " $E * I / l$ " is the sum of the stiffness of column stacks joining at the connection.

The above equation then becomes:

$$k = \sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} / \sum(2 * E * I / l)_{\text{beams}}$$

If there are any adjacent stacks beyond the joint at the end of the restrained length under consideration, then it must be considered whether these adjacent stacks are likely to contribute to the deflection or restrain it. If the stiffness are similar then the stiffness of the adjacent stacks can be ignored, and the guidance in PD6687 suggests that this range of similarity of stiffness can be taken as 15% above or below the stiffness of the stack being designed. Therefore:

If

$$1.85 \leq \sum((E * I / l)_{\text{stacks beyond this joint}}) / (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}} \leq 1.15$$

Then

$$\sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} = (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}}$$

Else

$$\sum(E * I / l)_{\text{cols}} = (E * I / l)_{\text{stack under consideration}} + \sum(E * I / l)_{\text{stacks beyond this joint}}$$

These stacks can be part of the same column length or another column length.

Note that as the restrained length may be multiple stacks, " $E * I$ " for this stack are the values for the stack being designed, and l is the restrained length. For the stacks beyond the restraint, " $E * I$ " are the values for the stack attached to the restraint, and l is the restrained length that the stack exists within.

Any beams framing into the end of the stack within 45 degrees of the axis being considered are said to be restraining beams for the stack in that direction.

There is a lower limit for the value of k :

$$k \geq 0.1$$

Additionally, Tekla Structural Designer imposes an upper limit:

$$k \leq 20$$

For bracing stacks, a warning is displayed when the calculated value of k exceeds this limit.

Fixed Column Base

$k = 0.1$ for fixed bases in Tekla Structural Designer. There is no clear guidance in EC2, but the Concrete Centre guidance suggests that this is suitable.

NOTE If you have set the bottom of the column to be "fixed" but the support as "pinned". The program will always assume that the support is fixed and therefore only ever consider the fixity applied to the column.

Pinned Column End

In any situation where the end of a column anywhere in the structure is pinned, $k = 20$.

No Effective Beams Found

If no effective beams are found to restrain the end of the stack in the direction in question, then the program will consider whether there is a flat slab restraining the stack at this end. If a flat slab is found it will either be considered as a restraint, or not, in each direction at each end of the stack - this is controlled by checking the option Use slab for stiffness calculation... located as a Stiffness setting in the column properties. If there are no effective beams and there is no flat slab (or any flat slab is not to be considered), then the program looks for the far end of the stack on the other side of the joint, and look at the restraints there, and so on until a restraint with an effective beam or flat slab to be considered is found.

If the stack is restrained by a flat slab, then the slab will be considered to act as a beam in this direction - note that it is one beam in the direction and NOT a beam on each side of the column.

If the stack is an end stack and there are no supports, beams or flat slabs considered to restrain the stack at this end in the direction, the end is therefore free in this direction and $k = 20$.

Footnotes

Wall panel classification (Concrete wall: EC2)

Slenderness ratio

Since the wall panel has a rectangular plan shape, the above calculation can be simplified:

In-plane,

Slenderness, $l_y = l_{0,y} / i_y$

Where

Radius of gyration, $i_y = l_w / (12)^{0.5}$

$l_{0,y}$ is the effective length,

l_w is the length of wall panel

Out-of-plane,

Slenderness, $l_z = l_{0,z} / i_z$

Where

Radius of gyration, $i_z = h_w / (12)^{0.5}$

$l_{0,z}$ is the effective length

h_w is the thickness of wall panel

Limiting slenderness ratio

$$\lambda_{lim} = 20 * A * B * C / \sqrt{n}$$

Where

$$A = 1 / (1 + (0.2 * \varphi_{ef})) \geq 0.7$$

$$B = \sqrt{1 + (2 * \omega)} \geq 1.1$$

$$C = 1.7 - r_m$$

Where

φ_{ef} is the effective creep ratio,

$$\omega = A_s * f_{yd} / (A_c * f_{cd}),$$

f_{yd} is the design yield strength of the reinforcement,

f_{cd} is the design compressive strength of the concrete,

A_s is the total area of longitudinal reinforcement,

$$n = N_{Ed} / (A_c * f_{cd}),$$

N_{Ed} is the design axial force between restrained floor levels in this direction,

$$r_m = M_{1,1} / M_{2,1}$$

$M_{1,1}$ and $M_{2,1}$ are the first order moments at the ends of the stack about the axis being considered, with $|M_{2,1}| \geq |M_{1,1}|$.

If $M_{1,1}$ and $M_{2,1}$ cause tension in the same side of the stack then r_m is positive and $C \leq 1.7$. If the converse is true then the stack is in double curvature, and it follows that r_m is negative and $C > 1.7$.

For braced stacks in which the first order moments arise only from transverse loads (lateral loading is significant) or imperfections ($M_{imp,1} > |M_{2,1}|$), C must be taken as 0.7,

For

bracing stacks, C must be taken as 0.7,

For restrained lengths encompassing more than one stack, C is taken as 0.7.

The effective creep ratio, φ_{ef} , is derived as follows:

$$f_{cm} = f_{ck} + 8 \text{ (N/mm}^2\text{)}$$

$$h_0 = 2 * A_g / u$$

Where

u is the section perimeter in contact with the atmosphere (assumed to be the full section perimeter),

A_g is the gross section area.

$$\alpha_1 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.7}$$

$$\alpha_2 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.2}$$

$$\alpha_3 = (35 / f_{cm})^{0.5}$$

If $f_{cm} \leq 35 \text{ N/mm}^2$,

$$\beta_H = (1.5 * (1 + (1.2 * RH))^{18} * h_0) + 250 \leq 1500$$

Else,

$$\beta_H = (1.5 * (1 + (1.2 * RH))^{18} * h_0) + (250 * \alpha_3) \leq 1500 * \alpha_3$$

Where

RH is the relative humidity, which is set under Design parameters in the column properties.

$$\beta_c(t, t_0) = ((t - t_0) / (\beta_H + t - t_0))^{0.3}$$

$$\beta_{t0} = 1 / (0.1 + t_0^{0.2})$$

$$\beta_{fcm} = 16.8 / \sqrt{f_{cm}}$$

Where

t_0 is the age of column loading and defaults to 14 days, if required it can be changed under Design parameters in the column properties.

If $f_{cm} \leq 35 \text{ N/mm}^2$,

$$\varphi_{RH} = 1 + (((1 - (RH / 100)) / (0.1 * h_0^{1/3}))$$

Else,

$$\varphi_{RH} = (1 + (((1 - (RH / 100)) / (0.1 * h_0^{1/3})) * \alpha_1)) * \alpha_2$$

Then,

$$\varphi_0 = \varphi_{RH} * \beta_{fcm} * \beta_{t0}$$

$$\varphi(\infty, t_0) = \varphi_0 * \beta_c(\infty, t_0)$$

If $\varphi(\infty, t_0) \leq 2$ and $\lambda < 75$ and $M_{max.1} / N_{Ed} \geq h$ and $\omega \geq 0.25$,

$$\varphi_{ef} = 0$$

Else

$$\varphi_{ef} = \varphi(\infty, t_0) * R_{PL}$$

Where

$M_{max.1}$ is the largest first order moment in the restrained length in this direction,

N_{Ed} is the design axial force in the restrained length in this direction,

R_{PL} is the permanent load ratio.

You are required to supply a value for the permanent load ratio which is located under Design parameters in the column properties. A default of 0.65 has been assumed, but you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

Tekla Structural Designer assumes that t_{∞} (t-infinity) is equal to 70 years (25550 days).

Pre-selection of Bracing Contribution

The significant parameter within the slenderness criteria is a choice of how a wall, or column, is contributing to the stability of the structure.

In-plane direction, a wall is usually considered to be a bracing member. Out-of-plane direction, a wall is usually considered to be braced by other stabilizing members. These are the default settings but can be edited.

Overview of second order effects (concrete wall: EC2)

For 'isolated' columns and walls, EN1992-1-1 (EC2) allows for second order effects and member imperfections in a number of ways,

- It specifies a minimum level of member imperfection along with a conservative value - see Clause 5.2 (7).
- It provides for the additional moment due to slenderness (member buckling) using one of two methods. One method (the (Nominal) Stiffness Method) increases the first-order moments in the column using an amplifier based on the elastic critical buckling load of the member - see Clause 5.8.7.3. The second method (the (Nominal) Curvature Method) calculates the 'second-order' moment directly based on an adjustment to

the maximum predicted curvature that the column section can achieve at failure in bending - see Clause 5.8.8.

- The impact of the slenderness is increased or decreased depending upon the effective length factor for the member. For braced members this will be ≤ 1.0 and for unbraced (bracing) members it will be ≥ 1.0 see Clause 5.8.3.2.
- Finally (and unrelated to second order effects), EC2 also requires consideration of a minimum moment based on the likelihood that the axial load cannot be fully concentric, see Clause 6.1 (4). The analysis moment (including the added effects of imperfection and second order effects) should not be less than this value.

Member imperfections (Clause 5.2 (7))

The imperfection moment is calculated using the eccentricity, $e_i = l_0/400$, and it is conservatively assumed that it increases the first-order moments irrespective of sign.

The imperfection moment is added to the analysis moment and if the member is slender a further second moment is added, if this total is $<$ the 6.1(4) moment then the 6.1(4) moment applies.

In the case of the Stiffness Method the imperfection moment is added before the moment magnifier is applied. It is applied to both braced and bracing columns/walls.

Curvature Method (Clause 5.8.8)

This method is only applied to symmetrical, rectangular and circular sections and is equally applicable to columns and walls. The second-order moment, M_2 ($= N_{Ed} e_2$), is calculated but the resulting design moment is only used if it is less than that calculated from the Stiffness Method. It is applied in the same manner as that for the Stiffness Method to both braced and bracing columns.

Stiffness Method (Clause 5.8.7)

This method is applied to all columns and walls.

For braced columns the second-order moment M_2 is calculated from:

$$M_2 = M_{e,1} \times \pi^2 / (8 \times (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1))$$

Where

$M_{e,1}$ = the maximum first-order moment in the mid-fifth

N_B = the buckling load of the column based on nominal stiffness and the effective length, hence

$$N_B = \pi^2 EI / l_0^2$$

N_{Ed} = the maximum axial force in the design length

When a point of zero shear occurs inside the mid-fifth or does not exist in the member length, the value of M_2 is added algebraically to the first-order

moments at the ends but only if this increases the first-order moment. At the mid-fifth position M_2 is always "added" in such a way as to increase the first-order mid-fifth moment.

When a point of zero shear occurs within the member length and is outside the mid-fifth, the second-order moments is taken as the greater of that calculated as above and that calculated as per Clause 5.8.7.3 (4) by multiplying all first-order moments by the amplifier,

$$1/(1 - N_{Ed}/N_B)$$

For bracing columns the second-order moments are calculated in the same way as braced columns except that in the determination of the amplifier, the buckling load is based on bracing effective lengths. These are greater than $1.0L$ and hence produce more severe amplifiers.

Second-order analysis

When second-order analysis is selected then both braced and bracing columns are treated the same as if first-order analysis were selected. If the second-order analysis is either the amplified forces method or the rigorous method then this approach will double count some of the global $P-\Delta$ effects in columns that are determined as having significant lateral loads. Also, when it is a rigorous second-order analysis there is some double counting of member $P-\delta$ effects in both braced and bracing columns.

Because global second order effects are introduced when second order analysis is selected, it is logical to set all members to "braced" so that only additional effects due to member slenderness are introduced.

Minimum moment (Clause 6.1 (4))

The minimum moment about each axis, M_{min} is calculated from Clause 6.1 (4).

For the specific circumstance of the moments from analysis being $<$ the minimum moment for both axes, design codes generally require that the minimum moment need only be considered acting about one axis at a time. In Tekla Structural Designer, for rectangular wall sections, the minimum moment is applied in the weaker direction.

Design moment calculations (Concrete wall:EC2)

For each combination and for each analysis model the end moments in the two local member directions, "1" and "2" are established. From these and the local load profile, the moment at any position and the maximum axial force in the member can be established.

Step 1 - the amplifier

Calculate the "amplifier" due to buckling in each of Direction 1 and Direction 2 from Equ. 5.28 and Equ. 5.30 of EC2 as,

$$k_{5.28} = 1 + \pi^2 / (8 * (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1))$$

$$k_{5.30} = 1 + 1 / (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1)$$

Where

N_B = the (Euler) buckling load in the appropriate direction

$$= \pi^2 EI / l_o^2$$

l_o = the effective length in the appropriate direction which for braced columns will be $\leq 1.0L$ and for unbraced columns $\geq 1.0L$

N_{Ed} = the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq$ zero i.e. tension, $k_{5.28}$ and $k_{5.30}$ are 1.0.

Step 2 - minimum moment

Calculate the minimum moment due to non-concentric axial force in each of the two directions from,

$$M_{min.1} = |N_{Ed}| * MAX(h/30, 20)$$

Where

h = the major dimension of the column in the appropriate direction

N_{Ed} the maximum axial force (compression or tension) in the column length under consideration (stack)

Step 3 - imperfection moment

Calculate the "first-order" and "second-order" imperfection moment in Direction 1 and Direction 2 as,

$$M_{imp.1} = N_{Ed} * e_i$$

$$M_{imp.2} = M_{imp.1} * k_{5.28}$$

Where

$M_{imp.1}$ = the "first-order" imperfection moment in a given direction

$M_{imp,2}$	=	the "second-order" imperfection moment in a given direction
e_i	=	the effective length in the appropriate direction divided by 400
	=	$l_o / 400$
N_{Ed}		the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq$ zero i.e. tension, $M_{imp,1}$ and $M_{imp,2}$ are zero.

Step 4 - second-order moment, curvature method

For rectangular and circular sections the second-order moment, $M_{2,curv}$, using the Curvature Method is calculated for each direction.

$$M_{2,curv} = N_{Ed} * e_2$$

Where

$$e_2 = \text{the deflection due to the maximum curvature achievable with the given axial force}$$

$$= (1/r) l_o^2 / c$$

$$N_{Ed} = \text{the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)}$$

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq$ zero i.e. tension, $M_{2,curv}$ is zero.

Step 5 - second-order moment, stiffness method

For all section shapes, the second-order moment, $M_{2,stiff}$, using the Stiffness Method is calculated in each direction based on the maximum first-order moment in the mid-fifth of the column, $M_{e,1}$, in the appropriate direction.

$$M_{2,stiff} = M_{e,1} * (\pi^2 / (8 * (N_B / N_{Ed} - 1)))$$

Where

$$M_{e,1} = \text{the maximum absolute moment in the mid-fifth of the column length under consideration (stack) in the appropriate direction}$$

$$N_{Ed} = \text{the maximum axial compressive force in the column length under consideration (stack)}$$

NOTE When $N_{Ed} \leq \text{zero}$ i.e. tension, $M_{2,\text{stiff}}$ is zero.

Step 6 - lateral loading classification

For the current design combination, for each direction using the member analysis routines, check for point(s) of zero shear within the column length. If none exist or are within the mid-fifth of the column length then this design case is designated as having lateral loads that are "not significant". Else the lateral loads are considered as "significant".

Step 7 - design moment at top

Calculate the design moment at the top of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads are "significant", or "not significant".

Step 8 - design moment at bottom

Calculate the design moment at the bottom of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads that are "significant", or "not significant".

Step 9 - design moment in mid-fifth

Calculate the design moment in the mid-fifth of the column in each direction (for both braced and unbraced columns) taking into account if lateral loads that are "significant", or "not significant".

Footnotes

Design for combined axial and bending (Concrete wall:EC2)

Tekla Structural Designer designs the column for an applied axial force and applied bending about one or both axes of the section. In the case of bi-axial bending, a resultant moment is created for the combination of the applied moments.

$$\sqrt{(M_{\text{major}}^2 + M_{\text{minor}}^2)} / \sqrt{(M_{\text{major,res}}^2 + M_{\text{minor,res}}^2)} \leq 1.0$$

Where

M_{major} = Moment about the major axis

M_{minor} = Moment about the minor axis

$M_{\text{major,res}}$ = Moment of resistance about the major axis

$M_{\text{minor, res}}$ = Moment of resistance about the minor axis

Tekla Structural Designer adopts the above approach in preference to the simplified method specified in equation 5.39 of EC2 as it has a wider range of application.

Design parameters for shear (Concrete wall: EC2)

For some of the shear design parameters, additional user defined limits can be applied - where this is the case minimum and maximum values are specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Wall > Reinforcement Layout**. These are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Minimum Shear Link Diameter

$\phi_{w, \min} = \text{MAX}[6\text{mm}, 0.25 * \text{largest longitudinal bar diameter}]$

Maximum Span Region Shear Link Spacing

- For design to **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA**:

$\phi_{w, \max} = \text{MIN}[20 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$

NOTE For UK NA when concrete class > C50/60 there are separate calculations in clause 9.5.3(3). These are not implemented but a warning is displayed in this situation.

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Swedish NA**

$\phi_{w, \max} = \text{MIN}[20 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$

- For design to **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA**:

$\phi_{w, \max} = \text{MIN}[15 * \text{smallest longitudinal bar diameter, lesser column dimension, 400mm}]$

Note that in the **Norwegian NA** this limit is reduced by a factor of 0.6 for strength classes equal or above C55/67.

Support Region Shear Link Spacing

For support regions, the maximum link spacing is reduced by 40%.

Long Term Compressive Strength Factor for Shear

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Swedish NA:**

$$\alpha_{ccw} = 1.0$$

- For design to **Finnish NA and Norwegian NA:**

$$\alpha_{ccw} = 0.85$$

Design Concrete Compressive Strength for Shear

f_{cwd}

- For design to **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA:**

$$f_{cwd} = \alpha_{ccw} * \text{MIN}(f_{ck}, 50) / \gamma_C$$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$$f_{cwd} = \alpha_{ccw} * f_{ck} / \gamma_C$$

Factor $C_{Rd,c}$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:**

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.18 / \gamma_C$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$C_{Rd,c} = 0.15 / \gamma_C$$

Factor k_1

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:**

$$k_1 = 0.15$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$\text{If } \sigma_{cp} \geq 0, \text{ then } k_1 = 0.15, \text{ Else } 0.30$$

Cracked Concrete Reduction Factor, v

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA:**

$$v = 0.6 * (1 - (f_{ck} / 250))$$

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 3.1.6(1)

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(1)

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(1)

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(6)

Cracked Concrete Reduction Factor, v_1

- For design to **UK NA**:

$$v_1 = v * (1 - (0.5 * \cos(\alpha)))$$

α is the inclination of links.

Note that links in columns are always assumed to be at 90° to column direction.

Therefore $v_1 = v$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**:

$$v_1 = v$$

Minimum Shear Reinforcement Ratio

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, and Swedish NA**:

$$\rho_{w,min} = 0.08 * \sqrt{f_{ck}} / f_{yk}$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA**:

$$\rho_{w,min} = 0.1 * \sqrt{f_{ck}} / f_{yk}$$

Maximum Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**:

$$\cot(\theta_{max}) = 1$$

$$\theta_{max} = 45^\circ$$

Minimum Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA**:

$$\cot(\theta_{min}) = 2.5$$

$$\theta_{min} = 21.8^\circ$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA**:

$$\text{If } \sigma_t = N_{Ed}/A_c < f_{ctk, 0,05}$$

$$\cot(\theta_{min}) = 2.5$$

$$\theta_{min} = 21.8^\circ$$

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(3)

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.2(5)

EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.3(2)

else

$$\cot(\theta_{\min}) = 1.25$$

$$\theta_{\min} = 38.7^\circ$$

Angle of Compression Strut

- For design to **UK NA**:

If $N_{Ed} \geq 0$ i.e. compression

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{c wd}))$$

else

$$\cot(\theta) = 1.25$$

$$\theta = 38.7^\circ$$

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**:

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{c wd}))$$

- For design to **Irish NA, Malaysian NA and Singapore NA**:

If $N_{Ed} \geq 0$ i.e. compression

$$\theta = 0.5 * \arcsin(2 * v_{Ed} / (0.9 * \alpha_{cw} * v_1 * f_{c wd}))$$

else

$$\cot(\theta) = 1.00$$

$$\theta = 45^\circ$$

Stress State Factor

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA**:

If $\sigma_{cp} \leq 0$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.0$$

else if $0 < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.25 * f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.0 + (\sigma_{cp} / f_{cd})$$

else if $0.25 * f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq 0.5 * f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 1.25$$

else if $0.5 * f_{cd} < \sigma_{cp} \leq f_{cd}$

$$\alpha_{cw} = 2.5 * (1.0 - (\sigma_{cp} / f_{cd}))$$

Minimum Shear Strength

- For design to **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Swedish NA:**

$$v_{\min} = 0.035 * k^{1.5} * f_{ck}^{0.5}$$

- For design to **Norwegian NA:**

$$v_{\min} = 0.035 * k^{2/3} * \min(f_{ck}, 0.65)^{0.5}$$

Footnotes

3.5 Concrete slab design to EC2

The topics in this section describe how the software applies EN 1992-1-1:2004 ([Ref. 1](#)) ([page 244](#)) to the design of reinforced concrete slabs.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Limitations \(concrete beam and slab: EC2\) \(page 142\)](#)
- [Design parameters for longitudinal bars \(concrete slab: EC2\) \(page 216\)](#)
- [Design for bending for rectangular sections \(concrete slab: EC2\) \(page 221\)](#)
- [Deflection check \(concrete beam and slab: EC2\) \(page 170\)](#)
- [Punching shear checks to EC2 \(page 234\)](#)

Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete slab: EC2)

For each of these parameters, any user defined limits (as specified in **Design Settings > Concrete > Cast-in-place > Slab > Reinforcement Layout**) are considered in addition to the EC2 or NA recommendations.

Minimum diameter of reinforcement

The minimum diameters of reinforcement are set by the user in Design Settings, the initial default values being:

Slab on Beams = 8 mm

Flat slab = 8 mm

If the design results in a bar size less than the user specified limits the checks fails.

Maximum diameter of reinforcement

The maximum diameters of reinforcement are set by the user in Design Settings, the initial default values being:

Slab on Beams	=	16 mm
Flat slab	=	25 mm

If the design results in a bar size greater than the user specified limits the checks fails.

Minimum distance between bars

The minimum clear horizontal distance between individual parallel bars, $s_{cl,min}$, is given by;¹

$$s_{cl,min} \geq \text{MAX} [k_1 \cdot \varphi, d_g + k_2, s_{cl,u,min}, 20 \text{ mm}]$$

where

k_1	=	the appropriate NDP
k_2	=	the appropriate NDP
d_g	=	the maximum size of aggregate
φ	=	the maximum diameter of bars in the layer
$s_{cl,u,min}$	=	user specified minimum clear distance between bars (default 100mm in "Slab on Beams" and 50mm in "Flat Slab")

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$k_1 = 1.0$$

For design in accordance with **Norwegian NA**;

$$k_1 = 2.0$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Norwegian NA** and **Swedish NA**;

$$k_2 = 5.0 \text{ mm}$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA**;

$$k_2 = 3.0 \text{ mm}$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 8.2(2)

Maximum spacing of tension bars (all slabs)

In accordance with clause 7.3.3(1) of EC2 for slabs not exceeding 200mm in overall depth and not subjected to significant axial tension the maximum limit on centre to centre bar spacing is governed by clause 9.3 only and there is no need to perform specific checks on the bar spacings to control cracking. These limits are applied to all slabs and then the additional limit in the next section are applied to slabs greater than 200mm thick.

From clause 9.3 the maximum limit on bar spacings can be somewhat subjective so these limits are user definable with conservative defaults as follows:

Principal bars (NDP) (cl. 9.3.1.1(3))

$$s_{\max} = 2h \text{ but } \leq 250\text{mm}$$

Secondary bars (NDP) (cl. 9.3.1.1(3))

$$s_{\max} = 3h \text{ but } \leq 400\text{mm}$$

Bars are classed as secondary if both the following are true:

1. The design moment for bars in this direction is lower than the design moment for bars in the other direction.
2. The calculated reinforcement requirement based on the design moment is less than the minimum reinforcement requirement.

Maximum spacing of tension bars (slab thickness exceeding 200mm)

The maximum centre to centre bar spacing for crack control, $s_{cr,\max}$, is dependent on the maximum allowable crack width, $w_{\max}$, specified in the slab properties (with a default value of 0.30mm).

The service stress in the reinforcement, σ_s , is given by;

$$\sigma_s = (A_{s,\text{reqd}}/A_{s,\text{prov}}) * (f_{yk}/\gamma_s) * R_{PL}$$

where

$$A_{s,\text{reqd}} = \text{area of reinforcement required for the maximum design Ultimate Limit State moment, } M_{Ed}$$

$A_{s,prov}$ = area of reinforcement provided
 R_{PL} = permanent load ratio

In the slab properties you are required to supply a value for the permanent load ratio, R_{PL} . A default of 0.65 has been assumed, but you are advised to consider if this is appropriate and adjust as necessary.

The maximum allowable centre to centre bar spacing, $s_{cr,max}$, is then obtained from table 7.3N (shown below) by looking up the calculated value of the service stress in the reinforcement, σ_s , using interpolation between values of σ_s

Steel Service Stress, σ_s (N/mm²)	Max Allowable bar Spacing for crack control, $s_{cr,max}$		
	$w_{max} = 0.40$ mm	$w_{max} = 0.30$ mm	$w_{max} = 0.20$ mm
≤ 160	300	300	200
200	300	250	150
240	250	200	100
280	200	150	50
320	150	100	Warning
360	100	50	Warning
>360	Warning	Warning	Warning

Minimum area of reinforcement

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement, $A_{s,min}$, is given by;¹

$$A_{s,min} \geq \text{MAX}[k_{min1} * b * d * (f_{ctm}/f_{yk}), k_{min2} * b * d]$$

where

k_{min1} = the appropriate NDP value
 k_{min2} = the appropriate NDP value
 f_{ctm} = mean value of the axial tensile strength of the concrete
 f_{yk} = characteristic yield strength of the reinforcement
 d = effective depth of reinforcement layer under consideration

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(1)

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$k_{\min 1} = 0.26$$

$$k_{\min 2} = 0.0013$$

NOTE There is no requirement to have a minimum area of compression reinforcement.

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement for crack control, $A_{s,\min,cr}$ is given by;¹

$$A_{s,\min,cr} \geq 0.4 \cdot k \cdot f_{ctm} \cdot A_{ct} / \sigma_s$$

where

$$k = 0.65$$

(it is assumed that slabs will always be > 800mm wide)

$$f_{ctm} = \text{mean value of axial tensile strength of concrete}$$

$$0.30 \cdot f_{ck}^{(2/3)} \text{ for concrete grades } \leq C50/60$$

$$2.12 \cdot \ln(1 + ((f_{ck} + 8)/10)) \text{ for concrete grades } > C50/60$$

$$\sigma_s = \text{the reinforcement service stress appropriate for the bar spacing of the reinforcement provided}$$

$$A_{ct} = \text{area of concrete in tension just before formation of first crack}$$

$$= b \cdot y \text{ where } y = \text{the distance of the Elastic NA from bottom of slab}$$

The minimum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement required, $A_{s,\min,reqd}$, is then given by;

$$A_{s,\min,reqd} \geq \text{MAX} (A_{s,\min}, A_{s,\min,cr})$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 7.3.2(2)

Maximum area of reinforcement

The maximum area of longitudinal tension reinforcement, $A_{st,max}$, is given by;¹

$$A_{st,max} \leq k_{\max} \cdot A_c$$

The maximum area of longitudinal compression reinforcement, $A_{sc,max}$, is given by;

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(3)

$$A_{sc,max} \leq k_{max} * A_c$$

where

$$k_{max} = \text{the appropriate NDP value}$$

$$A_c = \text{the cross sectional area of the slab design section}$$

$$= h * b$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations, UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA and Norwegian NA;**

$$k_{max} = 0.04$$

For design in accordance with **Finnish NA and Swedish NA;**

$$A_{st,max} = A_{sc,max} = \text{unlimited}$$

¹: EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 9.2.1.1(3)

Footnotes

Design for bending for rectangular sections (concrete slab: EC2)

Calculate the value of K from;

$$K = M_{Ed} / (f_{ck} * b * d^2)$$

Where

$$b = 1000\text{mm (the unit design width)}$$

Then calculate the limiting value of K, known as K' from;

$$K' = (2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_1) / (2 * k_2)) \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$K' = (2 * \eta * \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c) * (1 - \lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4)) * (\lambda * (\delta - k_3) / (2 * k_4)) \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$$k_i = \text{moment redistribution factors}$$

$$\delta = \text{moment redistribution ratio (= 1.0 in the current release)}$$

$$\gamma_c = \text{the NDP partial safety factor for concrete}$$

$$\alpha_{cc} = \text{coefficient to take account of long term effects on compressive strength of concrete}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda &= 0.8 \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2 \\ &= 0.8 - (f_{ck} - 50)/400 \text{ for } 50 < f_{ck} \leq 90 \text{ N/mm}^2 \\ \eta &= 1.0 \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2 \\ &= 1.0 - (f_{ck} - 50)/200 \text{ for } 50 < f_{ck} \leq 90 \text{ N/mm}^2\end{aligned}$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA and Norwegian NA;**

$$\begin{aligned}k_1 &= 0.40 \\ k_2 &= 1.0 \cdot (0.6 + 0.0014/\epsilon_{cu2}) \\ k_3 &= 0.40 \\ k_4 &= 1.0 \cdot (0.6 + 0.0014/\epsilon_{cu2}) \\ \gamma_c &= 1.5 \\ \alpha_{cc} &= 0.85\end{aligned}$$

For design in accordance with **EC2 Recommendations** and **Swedish NA;**

$$\begin{aligned}k_1 &= 0.44 \\ k_2 &= 1.25 \cdot (0.6 + 0.0014/\epsilon_{cu2}) \\ k_3 &= 0.54 \\ k_4 &= 1.25 \cdot (0.6 + 0.0014/\epsilon_{cu2}) \\ \gamma_c &= 1.5 \\ \alpha_{cc} &= 1.0\end{aligned}$$

IF $K \leq K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is not required.

Calculate the lever arm, z from;

$$z = \text{MIN}(0.5 \cdot d \cdot [1 + (1 - 2 \cdot K/(\eta \cdot \alpha_{cc}/\gamma_c))^{0.5}], 0.95 \cdot d)$$

The area of tension reinforcement required is then given by;

$$A_{st,reqd} = M_{Ed}/(f_{yd} \cdot z)$$

where

$$f_{yd} = f_{yk}/\gamma_s$$

γ_s = the NDP partial safety factor for reinforcement

The depth to the neutral axis, x_u is given by;

$$x_u = 2 \cdot (d - z)/\lambda$$

For design in accordance with **UK NA, EC2 Recommendations, Irish NA, Malaysian NA, Singapore NA, Finnish NA, Norwegian NA and Swedish NA;**

$$\gamma_s = 1.15$$

IF $K > K'$ THEN compression reinforcement is required.

Calculate the depth to the neutral axis from;

$$x_u = d \cdot (\delta - k_1) / k_2 \text{ for } f_{ck} \leq 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$x_u = d \cdot (\delta - k_3) / k_4 \text{ for } f_{ck} > 50 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Calculate the stress in the reinforcement from;

$$f_{sc} = \text{MAX} (\text{MIN}(E_s \cdot \epsilon_{cu3} \cdot (1 - (d_2/x_u)), f_{yd}), 1)$$

where

$$d_2 = \text{the distance from the extreme fibre in compression to the c of g of the compression reinforcement}$$

Calculate the limiting bending strength, M' from;

$$M' = K' \cdot f_{ck} \cdot b \cdot d^2$$

Calculate the lever arm from;

$$z = 0.5 \cdot d \cdot [1 + (1 - 2 \cdot K' / (\eta \cdot \alpha_{cc} / \gamma_c))^{0.5}]$$

The area of compression reinforcement required, $A_{s2,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{s2,reqd} = (M_{Ed} - M') / (f_{sc} \cdot (d - d_2))$$

The area of tension reinforcement required, $A_{st,reqd}$ is given by;

$$A_{st,reqd} = M' / (f_{yd} \cdot z) + A_{s2,reqd} \cdot f_{sc} / f_{yd}$$

3.6 Pad and strip base design to EC2

The topics in this section describe how the software applies EN 1992-1-1:2004 ([Ref. 1](#)) ([page 244](#)) to the design of pad and strip bases.

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Checks performed \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 224\)](#)
- [Foundation Bearing Capacity \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 224\)](#)
- [Design for bending \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 228\)](#)
- [Design for shear \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 228\)](#)
- [Check for sliding \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 229\)](#)
- [Check for uplift \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 230\)](#)
- [Punching shear checks to EC2 \(page 234\)](#)

See also

[Design parameters for longitudinal bars \(concrete beam: EC2\) \(page 144\)](#)

Checks performed (pad and strip base:EC2)

The checks performed for both directions are:

- EC7 - Max soil bearing pressure must not exceed allowable bearing pressure.
- EC2 - Provided steel must be greater than $A_{s,min}$ for both vertical directions.
- EC2 - Provided bar spacing must be inside the limiting spacing
- EC2 - Provided bar size must be inside the limiting sizes
- EC2 - Check for bending moment capacity
- EC2 - Check for shear capacity
- EC2 - Punching check at column face
- EC2 - Punching check at critical perimeter
- EC7 - Check for overturning forces - not in the current release
- EC7 - Check for sliding
- EC7 - Check for uplift

NOTE EC7 - Check for overturning forces are beyond scope of the current release.

Foundation Bearing Capacity (pad and strip base:EC2)

Annex A of EC7 allows bearing capacity to be checked using two sets of partial factors: A1 and A2.

In Tekla Structural Designer the bearing capacity check is performed on STR load combinations using set A1 and on GEO load combinations using set A2.

Alternatively, an option is also provided to check a **Presumed Bearing Resistance** in accordance with EN1997-1 cl.6.5.2.4).

Check for Pad Base Bearing Capacity

Total vertical force:

$$F_{dz} = \gamma_G (F_{swt} + F_{soil} + F_{sur,G}) + \gamma_Q F_{sur,Q} - F_{z,sup}$$

Moment about X axis:

$$M_{x,c} = M_{x,sup} + F_{z,sup} * y_1 + h * F_{y,sup}$$

Moment about Y axis:

$$M_{y,c} = M_{y,sup} + F_{z,sup} * x_1 + h * F_{x,sup}$$

Where:

L_x = Length of foundation in X-direction

L_y = Length of foundation in Y-direction

A = $L_x * L_y$ = Foundation area

h = Depth of foundation

h_{soil} = Depth of soil above the foundation

l_x = Length of column/wall in X-direction

l_y = Length of column/wall in Y-direction

x_1 = Offset in X-axis. (Distance between centre of the pad to the centre of the support in X-direction)

y_1 = Offset in Y-axis. (Distance between centre of the pad to the centre of the support in Y-direction)

γ_G = 1.35 = Permanent partial factor - unfavourable action when Set A1 used

= 1.0 = Permanent partial factor - unfavourable action when Set A2 used

γ_Q = 1.5 = Variable partial factor - unfavourable action when Set A1 used

= 1.3 = Variable partial factor - unfavourable action when Set A2 used

F_{swt} = $A * h * \gamma_{conc}$ = foundation self-weight

F_{soil} = $(A - A_c) * h_{soil} * \gamma_{soil}$ = Unfactored load from soil

γ_{soil} = Density of soil - user input

$F_{sur,G}$ = $(A - A_c) * sc_G$ = Unfactored load from surcharge for permanent loadcase

$F_{sur,Q}$ = $(A - A_c) * sc_Q$ = Unfactored load from surcharge for variable loadcase

sc_G = Surcharge in permanent loadcase - user input

sc_Q	=	Surcharge in variable loadcase - user input
A_c	=	cross section of the column/wall
$F_{z,sup}$	=	Vertical load acting on support in STR/GEO limit states- (from analysis)
$M_{x,sup}$	=	Moment acting on support around X-axis in STR/GEO limit states- from analysis
$M_{y,sup}$	=	Moment acting on support around Y-axis in STR/GEO limit states - from analysis
$F_{x,sup}$	=	Horizontal force acting on support X-direction in STR/GEO limit states - from analysis
$F_{y,sup}$	=	Horizontal force acting on support Y-direction in STR/GEO limit states - from analysis

Eccentricity in X-direction:

$$e_x = M_{y,c} / F_{dz}$$

Eccentricity in Y-direction:

$$e_y = M_{x,c} / F_{dz}$$

Uniform rectangular stress distribution method

Effective length in X-direction:

$$L'_x = L_x - 2e_x \quad \text{when } e_x > 0$$

$$L'_x = L_x + 2e_x \quad \text{when } e_x < 0$$

Effective length in Y-direction:

$$L'_y = L_y - 2e_y \quad \text{when } e_y > 0$$

$$L'_y = L_y + 2e_y \quad \text{when } e_y < 0$$

Design bearing pressure:

$$f_{dz} = F_{dz} / (L'_x * L'_y)$$

Presumed bearing capacity method

If

$$\text{abs}(e_x) / L_x + \text{abs}(e_y) / L_y \leq 0.167$$

Then Base reaction acts within middle third - no loss of contact and:

Pad base pressures:

$$\begin{aligned} q_1 &= F_{dz} / A - 6 * M_{y,c} / (L_x * A) + 6 * M_{x,c} / (L_y * A) \\ q_2 &= F_{dz} / A - 6 * M_{y,c} / (L_x * A) - 6 * M_{x,c} / (L_y * A) \\ q_3 &= F_{dz} / A + 6 * M_{y,c} / (L_x * A) + 6 * M_{x,c} / (L_y * A) \\ q_4 &= F_{dz} / A + 6 * M_{y,c} / (L_x * A) - 6 * M_{x,c} / (L_y * A) \end{aligned}$$

Max base pressure:

$$q_{\max} = \max(q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4)$$

Else base reaction acts outside middle third - loss of contact.

In this case the pressure calculations are more complex - in Tekla Structural Designer these are done using sets of equations presented in an article by Kenneth E. Wilson published in the Journal of Bridge Engineering in 1997.

NOTE Seismic combinations: The presumed bearing capacity method uses SLS combinations in the bearing checks - however as there is no clear Eurocode guidance on service factors for seismic combinations, in Tekla Structural Designer they are not currently assigned. If using the presumed bearing capacity method, to avoid the check being performed for zero loading you are advised to consider which service factors might be appropriate and update the seismic combinations manually.

Check for Strip Base Bearing Capacity

The principles used in the strip base bearing capacity calculations are similar to those for pad foundations. Only the direction X is checked (around Y-axis) using segment widths.

Design bearing pressure:

$$f_{dz} = F_{dz} / (L'_x * L_y)$$

Design for bending (pad and strip base:EC2)

Bending design calculations are performed for the STR load combinations.

For tension on the bottom face of the foundation, the design bending moment may be taken as that at the face of the column or wall and may therefore be less than the peak bending moment.

The bending capacity check follows the same basic principle as used for beams, see: [Design for bending for rectangular sections \(beams and slabs: EC2\) \(page 150\)](#).

Design for shear (pad and strip base:EC2)

Pad base shear design check

Calculate tension reinforcement ratio (cl 6.2.2(1)):

$$\rho_l = \min(A_{sl} / (L * d), 0.02)$$

where

A_{sl} = area of tension reinforcement

L = unit width of foundation in which A_{sl} is provided

d = effective depth of reinforcement in direction considered

$F_{y,sup}$ Horizontal force acting on support Y-direction in STR/GEO limit states - from analysis

Calculate k (cl. 6.2.2(1)):

$$k = \min(1 + (200\text{mm}/d)^{1/2}, 2.0)$$

Calc min shear strength (NDP) (cl. 6.2.2(1)):

$$V_{\min} = 1.035k^{3/2}f_{ck}^{1/2}$$

EC2 recommendations
for UK, Irish, Malaysian and
Singapore NA

Calculate resistance without shear reinforcement for X and Y directions (cl. 6.2.2(1)):

$$V_{Rd,c,x} = \max(C_{Rd,c} * k * (100 N^2 / \text{mm}^4 * \rho_l * f_{ck})^{1/3}, V_{\min})$$

$$V_{Rd,c,y} = \max(C_{Rd,c} * k * (100 N^2 / \text{mm}^4 * \rho_l * f_{ck})^{1/3}, V_{\min})$$

Maximum allowable shear resistance (cl. 6.2.2(6)):

$$V_{Rd,max} = 1.5 * v * f_{cd}$$

where

$$f_{cd} = \text{concrete design compressive strength}$$

$$v = \text{cracked concrete reduction factor}$$

If applied design shear force is less than or equal to the shear resistance i.e $V_{Ed} \leq V_{Rd} = \min(V_{Rd,c}, V_{Rd,max})$ the foundation thickness is adequate for beam shear.

Strip base shear design check

The principle of the strip base shear design check is similar to that for the pad base. Only the direction X is checked (around Y-axis) using segment widths.

Check for sliding (pad and strip base:EC2)

The check for sliding is carried out for pad foundations only.

If there is no horizontal force acting on foundation check for sliding is not required.

Sliding resistance (EC7 Section 6.5.3) - forces are defined from STR combinations.

Horizontal Forces on foundation for each direction:

$$F_{dx} = F_{x,sup}$$

$$F_{dy} = F_{y,sup}$$

where

$F_{x,sup}$ = factored horizontal force acting on support in X-dir. (from analysis)

$F_{y,sup}$ = factored horizontal force acting on support in Y-dir. (from analysis)

Horizontal force on foundation:

$$H_d = [\text{abs}(F_{dx})^2 + \text{abs}(F_{dy})^2]^{0.5}$$

Sliding resistance verification (Section 6.5.3)

Sliding resistance (exp.6.3b and table A.5):

$$R_{H,d} = [F_{zG,d} + \gamma_{Gf} * F_{swt}] * \tan(\delta_k) / \gamma_{R,h}$$

where

δ_k = factored horizontal force acting on support in X-dir.

$\gamma_{R,h} = 1.1$ (set R2) : EC7 recomm. and for Irish and Malaysian NA

$\gamma_{R,h} = 1.0$ (set R1) : for UK, Singapore NA

$\gamma_{Gf} = 1.0$ (permanent favorable action)

$F_{zG,d}$ = Vertical load acting on support in STR/GEO limit states where favorable actions considered.

Check for uplift (pad and strip base:EC2)

For combinations producing tension at the support the tension value is compared to the stabilizing loads. Auto-design can automatically increment the base size to achieve a passing status.

3.7 Pile cap design to EC2

The forces acting on a pile cap are applied to the foundation at the foundation level. The foundation can take axial load and bi-axial shear and moment.

Pile cap design is divided between the pile design (pile axial and lateral capacity checks) and the structural design of the pile cap which includes bending, shear and punching shear design checks.

Pile cap calculations are performed in accordance with EN 1992-1-1:2004 ([Ref. 1](#)) ([page 244](#)).

Bottom reinforcement is designed to the Eurocode - (EC base, UK NA, Irish NA, Singapore NA or Malaysia NA).

Click the links below to find out more:

- [Pile axial capacity \(pile cap:EC2\) \(page 231\)](#)
- [Pile lateral capacity \(pile cap:EC2\) \(page 231\)](#)
- [Design for bending \(pile cap:EC2\) \(page 232\)](#)
- [Design for shear \(pile cap:EC2\) \(page 232\)](#)
- [Checks for limiting parameters \(pile cap:EC2\) \(page 233\)](#)
- [Punching shear checks to EC2 \(page 234\)](#)

Pile axial capacity (pile cap:EC2)

Annex A of EC7 allows bearing capacity to be checked using two sets of partial factors: A1 and A2.

In Tekla Structural Designer the bearing capacity check is performed on STR load combinations using set A1 and on GEO load combinations using set A2.

Pile capacity passes if:

$$R_{c,d} \geq P_n \geq -R_{t,d}$$

where

$R_{c,d}$ = Pile design compression resistance

$R_{t,d}$ = Pile design tension resistance

P_n = Pile load

Pile lateral capacity (pile cap:EC2)

NOTE This check is only performed if Check piles for lateral load is selected in Design Settings.

Annex A of EC7 allows lateral capacity to be checked using two sets of partial factors: A1 and A2.

In Tekla Structural Designer the lateral capacity check is performed on STR load combinations using set A1 and on GEO load combinations using set A2.

Pile capacity passes if:

$$H_{R,1} \geq H_F$$

$$H_{R,2} \geq H_F$$

where

$H_{R,1}$ = Pile design lateral resistance (STR combinations)

$H_{R,2}$ = Pile design lateral resistance (GEO combinations)

H_F = Lateral load

Design for bending (pile cap:EC2)

The pile cap is treated as a beam in bending, where the critical bending moments for the design for the bottom reinforcement are taken at the face of the column.

Bending design calculations are performed for the STR load combinations.

The bending capacity check follows the same basic principle as used for beams, see: [Design for bending for rectangular sections \(beams and slabs: EC2\) \(page 150\)](#).

Design for shear (pile cap:EC2)

Shear design calculations are performed for the STR load combinations.

Determination of Design Shear Stress

Shear stress acting on side 1 in direction $Xv_{Ed,x1} = \Sigma P_{n,1} / (d_x * L_y)$

Shear stress acting on side 2 in direction $Xv_{Ed,x2} = \Sigma P_{n,2} / (d_x * L_y)$

Shear stress acting on side 1 in direction $Yv_{Ed,y1} = \Sigma P_{n,1} / (d_y * L_x)$

Shear stress acting on side 2 in direction $Yv_{Ed,y2} = \Sigma P_{n,2} / (d_y * L_x)$

Maximum allowable shear resistance

$$V_{Rd,max} = 0.5 * v * f_{cd}^1$$

where:

$$f_{cd} = \alpha_{cc} * f_{ck} / \gamma_c$$

$\alpha_{cc} = 1.0$ (EC2); $\alpha_{cc} = 0.85$ (supported NAs)

$$\gamma_c = 1.5$$

$$v = 0.6 * [1 - (f_{ck}/250)]$$

Check for Shear

The shear capacity check procedure is identical to that for pad bases, see: [Design for shear \(pad and strip base:EC2\) \(page 228\)](#)

Footnotes

Checks for limiting parameters (pile cap:EC2)

Check for distance of pile cap overhang

Check pile edge distance "e" for pile "i" in a pile group for both directions:

The check passes if:

$$\text{If } \min e_i > e_{\min,user}$$

Check for minimum pile spacing

Check centre to centre spacing "s" between piles "i" and "j" in a pile group:

The check passes if:

$$\text{If } s_{ij} > s_{\min,user}$$

where

$$s_{\min,user} = \text{user input}$$

Check for maximum pile spacing

Check centre to centre maximum spacing "s" between piles "i" and "j" in a pile group:

The check passes if:

$$\text{If } s_{ij} < s_{\max,user}$$

$$s_{\max,user} = \text{user input}$$

Other checks

The remaining checks are identical to those for pad bases, see: [Design parameters for longitudinal bars \(EC2\) \(page 144\)](#)

¹ EN 1992-1-1:2004 Section 6.2.2(6)

3.8 Punching shear checks to EC2

Aspects of Tekla Structural Designer's punching shear design that are specific to EC2.

Limitations and assumptions

Applicability of wall punching checks

Punching checks of walls on slabs are made but should be viewed with particular caution.

In particular there is some debate regarding the applicability of a punching check from a long wall - the check doesn't consider the potential for stress concentrations at the ends of the wall.

Columns and walls not perpendicular to slabs

EC2 only provides specific design guidance for rectangular columns which are perpendicular to slabs. The program treats all columns and walls that are not perpendicular to slabs as if they are for the punching areas developed.

This is conservative as the punching area/perimeter will be smaller than that for the angled column or wall.

Overlapping control perimeters

The calculations are beyond scope in the following situations:

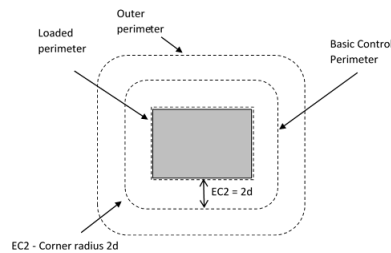
- If two control areas touch then both areas are set to Beyond Scope.
- If an edge or corner area contains another column or wall then both areas are set to Beyond Scope.

The exception to this is the pile pair check in the design of pile caps.

Loaded perimeter near slab edges

EC2 only provides specific design guidance for rectangular columns with this guidance being further limited, for the case of edge and corner columns, to those cases where the edge(s) of the slab coincide with the edge(s) of the column. In the program the equations for other column shapes and scenarios are therefore obtained by modifying those equations presented in EC2. It is considered that the modified equations result in either the correct perimeter length being obtained or a conservative value i.e. an underestimate of the perimeter length.

Punching shear perimeters



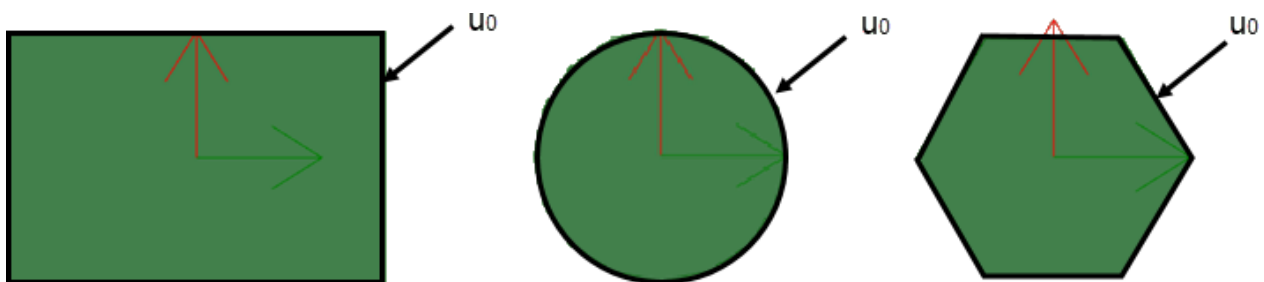
There are a number of perimeters associated with Punching Shear

- Loaded perimeter, u_0 - perimeter around the loaded area - e.g. face of the wall or column
- Basic control perimeter, u_1 - is the check punching shear perimeter $2d$ from the loaded perimeter
- Outer perimeter - the first perimeter at which the punching check passes with no need for shear reinforcement - equal to or outside the basic control perimeter (equal to if the check passes at the basic control perimeter).

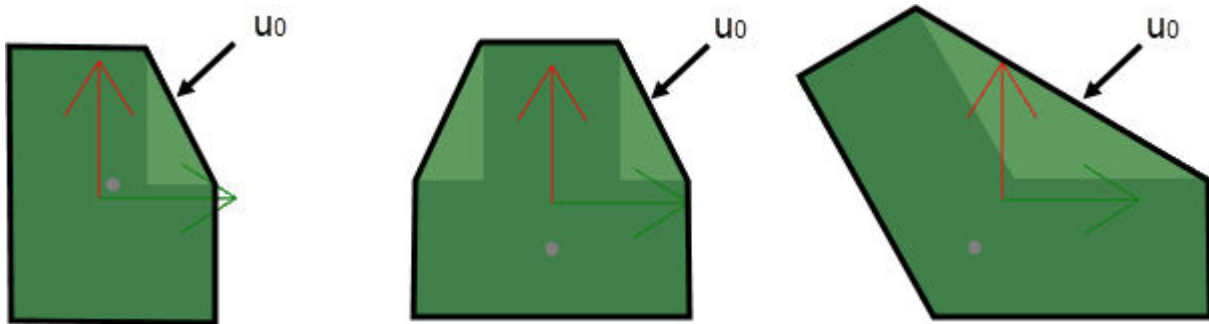
d is the effective depth to tension reinforcement in the slab. If a slab around the check position changes depth, the thinnest slab and its d values are used. (Note this definition changes in the presence of a drop panel.)

Loaded, control and outer perimeters

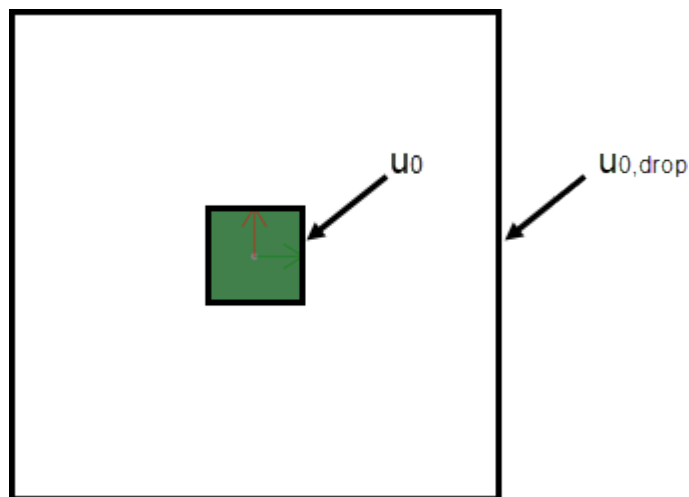
- **Loaded perimeter**
 - The Loaded perimeter, u_0 is the minimum length perimeter enclosing the loaded area, which for a regular column will be the column section perimeter.



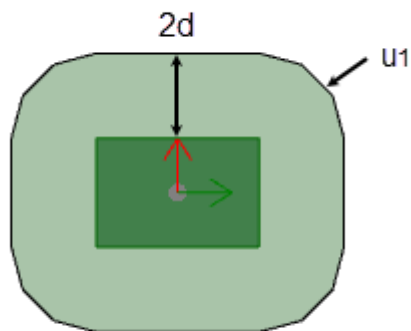
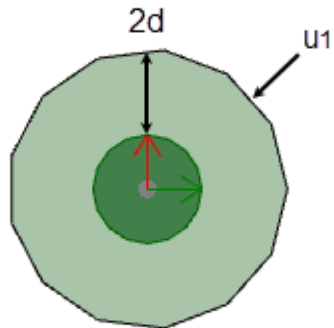
- In some cases of irregular column shapes, such as the L, T, and elbow shapes below, it will be different (shorter) than the actual column section perimeter.



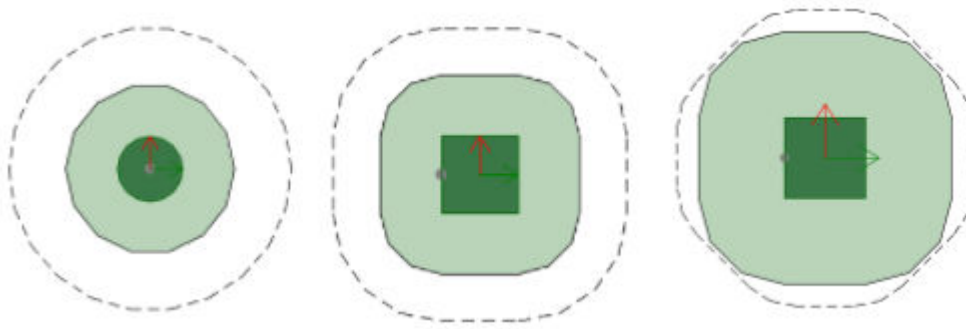
- In the case of columns with drops there are two loaded perimeters - one for the column and one at the edge of the drop, (uses each effective depth).



- The maximum allowable stress limit is checked at the loaded perimeter.
- **Control perimeter**
 - There will only be one control perimeter, u_1 at check positions without drops.



- At positions with drops there will be one control perimeter outside the drop and possibly one inside if the drop is large enough for it to fit.
- Is of circular shape and located at two times the effective depth from column face for columns with circular cross section.
- Is of rectangular shape with rounded corners and located at two times the effective depth outside the perimeter equivalent rectangular section for all other shapes.
- **Outer Perimeter**



- Is the punching shear perimeter with enough length to allow for concrete to resist shear stress on it's own.
- Reinforcement is no longer required at this perimeter.
- No other perimeters are required to be checked beyond the outer perimeter.
- The distance from bounding rectangle section to the outer perimeter is used to calculate the required length of reinforcement.
- Its shape follows the control/critical perimeter shapes but changes with the use of non-uniform reinforcement arrangements (i.e.: orthogonal).

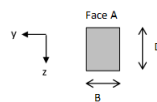
Length of the loaded perimeter u_0

Loaded perimeter for columns

The length of the loaded perimeter, u_0 at the column face is calculated in accordance with clause 6.4.5(3) of EC2.

Each possible column shape also has a bounding rectangle or circle calculated to aid in the design calculations.

For a rectangular column:



$$u_0 = 2 \times (D + B)$$

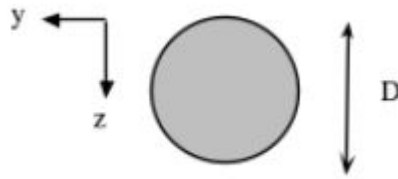
Bounding rectangle properties:

$$D_{\text{Bound}} = D$$

$$B_{\text{Bound}} = B$$

$$\text{Bounding Perimeter, } u_{0\text{Bound}} = 2 \times (D_{\text{Bound}} + B_{\text{Bound}})$$

For circular columns

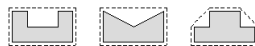


Loaded perimeter, $u_0 = \pi \times D$

Bounding circle, $D_{\text{Bound}} = D$

Bounding circle perimeter, $u_{0\text{Bound}} = \pi \times D_{\text{Bound}}$

For columns which have a re-entrant corner, i.e. where an internal angle is greater than 180 degrees, the length of a side and the slab/column interface is adjusted as indicated in the sketches below with the perimeter taken as the shortest distance around the column.



u_0 = shortest distance around the column, as shown above.

Bounding rectangle properties:

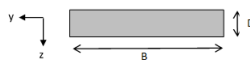
$D_{\text{Bound}} = D$

$B_{\text{Bound}} = B$

Bounding Perimeter, $u_{0\text{Bound}} = 2 \times (D_{\text{Bound}} + B_{\text{Bound}})$

Loaded perimeter for walls

The length of the loaded perimeter at the wall face may be calculated in accordance with clause 6.4.5(3) of EC2 as determined below.



$u_0 = 2 \times (D + B)$

Bounding rectangle properties:

$D_{\text{Bound}} = D$

$B_{\text{Bound}} = B$

Bounding Perimeter, $u_{0\text{Bound}} = 2 \times (D_{\text{Bound}} + B_{\text{Bound}})$

Loaded perimeter for point loads

The length of the loaded perimeter at the point load may be calculated in accordance with clause 6.4.5(3) of EC2 as determined below.

$$u_0 = 2 \times (D_{\text{load}} + B_{\text{load}})$$

Bounding rectangle properties:

$$D_{\text{Bound}} = D_{\text{load}}$$

$$B_{\text{Bound}} = B_{\text{load}}$$

$$\text{Bounding Perimeter, } u_{0\text{Bound}} = 2 \times (D_{\text{Bound}} + B_{\text{Bound}})$$

Additional loaded perimeter drops

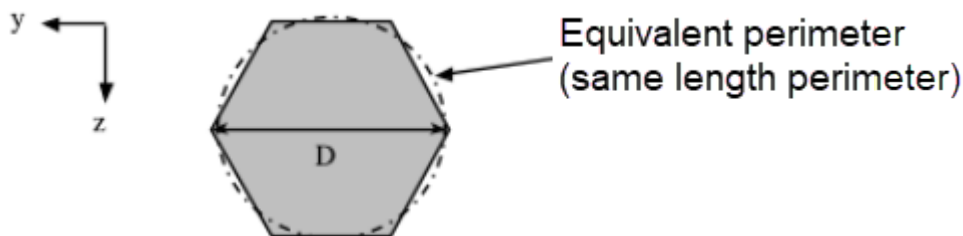
The additional loaded perimeter for a column/wall with a drop is defined by the perimeter of the rectangular drop

$$u_{0\text{drop}} = 2 \times B_{\text{drop}} \times D_{\text{drop}}$$

The equivalent perimeter

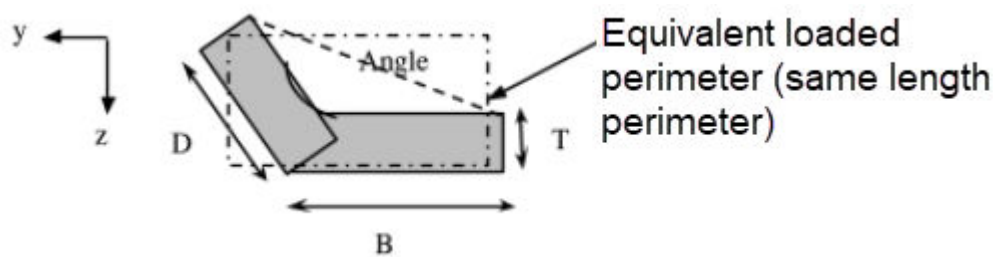
For “circular” shapes of column (circle and polygon with n sides), the equivalent perimeter -

- $D_{\text{Equiv}} = D_{\text{Bound}} \times u_0 / u_{0\text{Bound}}$
- $B_{\text{Equiv}} = B_{\text{Bound}} \times u_0 / u_{0\text{Bound}}$



For “rectangular” shapes of column (all except circle and polygon of n sides) and walls, the equivalent loaded perimeter -

- $D_{\text{Equiv}} = D_{\text{Bound}} \times u_0 / u_{0\text{Bound}}$
- $B_{\text{Equiv}} = B_{\text{Bound}} \times u_0 / u_{0\text{Bound}}$



The equivalent perimeter is used in three situations

- adjustment of the loaded perimeter length/shape u_0 for edge and corner columns/walls
- in calculation of β for edge and corner columns/walls.
- Reduction in V_{Ed}

Length of the basic control perimeter u_1

For all internal column/wall shapes and point loads the length of the basic control perimeter is

$$u_1 = u_0 + 4 \pi d$$

Where d is the effective depth to tension reinforcement in the slab.

NOTE If a slab around the check position changes depth, the thinnest slab and its d values are used.

Modification of control perimeters to take account of slab openings

If any openings have been defined in the slab and if the nearest opening edge is not greater than $6d$ from the face of the column then the length of the loaded perimeter at the column face, u_0 , and the length of the basic control perimeter, u_1 , are both reduced to take account of the presence of the opening(s) in accordance with fig. 6.14 of EC2.

NOTE When a perimeter length has been reduced to cater for openings - as the exact position of the opening in relation to the reinforcement strips is not known, the calculations conservatively ignore any patch reinforcement in the punching checks - only the slab reinforcement is used.

User Modification of control perimeters

If you want to consider the effect of openings, but do not want to place them in the slab, this can be done by defining the following properties:

- u_0 - user reduction
- u_1 - user reduction

When applied, the length of the respective shear perimeters (except that at the column/wall face) are reduced by the specified amount.

User reductions can also be applied in order to:

- adjust the length of perimeters of irregular section shapes
- obtain the reduced loaded perimeter for edge and corner cases as suggested by EN1992-1-1:2004 clause 6.4.5(3)

Magnification factor, beta

The magnification factor β is used to increase the basic transfer shear force V_{Ed} to take account of the increase in shear stress across part of the control perimeter due to the moment transferred into the column. It is calculated differently depending on whether the column is internal, at an edge or at a corner.

For internal columns,

- EN 1992-1-1 clause applicability: 6.4.3(3) and 6.4.3(6),
 - β is always calculated by the rigorous method using equation (6.38) modified for a stress distribution from biaxial bending,
 - The value for internal columns in braced structures with approximately equal spans from figure 6.21N can be optionally used as a minimum,

For edge columns,

- EN 1992-1-1 clause applicability: 6.4.3(3) and 6.4.3(6),
 - β is calculated as the minimum between the values obtained by the rigorous method using equation (6.39) modified for biaxial bending and the simplified value for edge columns from figure 6.21N with an added allowance for unequal spans equivalent to the portion of stress calculated by the rigorous method from moments acting about an axis perpendicular to the slab edge. The minimum is used because exclusively using the rigorous method becomes overly- conservative where both experience and guidance from BS 8110 shows that regardless of column contribution to lateral stability using the simplified method produces satisfactory results,
- EN 1992-1-1 clause applicability: 6.4.3(3) and 6.4.3(4),
 - EN1992-1-1 6.4.3(4) introduces the special case of moment eccentricity being towards the exterior of the slab. And in this special case β is

calculated solely by the rigorous method using equation (6.39) modified for biaxial bending,

For corner columns,

- EN 1992-1-1 clause applicability: 6.4.3(3) and 6.4.3(6),
 - β is calculated as the minimum between the values obtained by the rigorous method using equation (6.39) modified for biaxial bending and the simplified value for corner columns from figure 6.21N. The minimum is used because exclusively using the rigorous method becomes overly-conservative where both experience and guidance from BS 8110 shows that regardless of column contribution to lateral stability using the simplified method produces satisfactory results,
- EN 1992-1-1 clause applicability: 6.4.3(3) and 6.4.3(5),
 - EN1992-1-1 6.4.3(5) introduces the special case of moment eccentricity being towards the exterior of the slab. And in this special case β is calculated solely by the rigorous method using equation (6.39) modified for biaxial bending,

Pad base punching shear checks

When working to EC2, punching shear checks are carried out for pad foundations using STR load combinations.

Punching shear should be checked at the face of the column and clause 6.4.4(2) of EC2 states that punching shear should also be checked at perimeters within $2d$ from the column face where d is the average effective depth of the tension reinforcement in the two orthogonal directions.

In Tekla Structural Designer punching shear is checked at 9 locations i.e. at the column face and at the control perimeter located at $0.25d$, $0.5d$, $0.75d$, d , $1.25d$, $1.5d$, $1.75d$ and $2d$ from the face of the column. Design checks being reported for all perimeters that fall within the dimensions of the foundation.

The punching shear checks for pad bases follow the same basic principle as used for mats, the main differences being:

- Checks at multiple perimeters up to $2d$ are required in pad base punching checks.
- Column Local axes are always parallel with the pad base edges in the pad base punching checks.
- Loads from the column are always above the pad base (one direction).
- No openings can be placed in pad bases.
- No shear reinforcement is used in pad bases.

Pile cap punching shear checks

When working to EC2, punching shear checks are performed for the column and the individual and paired piles.

The punching shear check for the column is similar to that for pad bases, but with the following differences:

- the shear force at a perimeter uses the value from the column reduced by pile loads within the perimeter
- a single additional perimeter based on the location of the pile closest to the column will be checked, only if located in the region between the loaded perimeter and the perimeter at $2d$

The punching shear check for the pile is similar to that for pad bases, but with the following differences:

- variable d is replaced with d_{red} where $d_{red} = \min(h - \text{"pile penetration depth"}, \text{average reinforcement effective depth})$
- no moments act on top of the pile, only axial load considered
- shear stress at the column face is checked only for the pile with the largest pile load:
 - $v_{Ed,0} = \beta * P_{n,max} / (u_0 \times d)$

3.9 References EC2

1. British Standards Institution. BS EN 1992-1-1:2004. Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures. General rules and rules for buildings. BSI 2004.
2. British Standards Institution. NA to BS EN 1992-1-1:2004. Eurocode 2: Design of concrete structures. General rules and rules for buildings. BSI 2005.

4 Vibration of floors to SCI P354

The below topics describe the **simplified** SCI P354 floor vibration calculations that can be performed in Tekla Structural Designer.

NOTE Tekla Structural Designer's SCI P354 **footfall assessment** is described elsewhere, see: .

The following simplified floor vibration calculations topics are covered here:

- [Introduction to floor vibration \(P354\) \(page 245\)](#)
- [Scope of floor vibration \(P354\) \(page 246\)](#)
- [Limitations and Assumptions of floor vibration to P354 \(page 247\)](#)
- [Design philosophy of P354 floor vibration \(page 247\)](#)
- [Provided performance P354 floor vibration \(page 251\)](#)
- [Input requirements for P354 floor vibration \(page 259\)](#)

4.1 Introduction to floor vibration (P354)

This handbook describes the SCI P354 floor vibration calculations that can be performed in Tekla Structural Designer.

With the advent of long span floors, multiple openings in webs, minimum floor depth zones etc. the vibration response of floors in multi-storey buildings under normal occupancy has increasingly become of concern to clients and their Engineers and Architects.

Detailed guidance on the subject is available through the SCI Publication P354 Design of Floors for Vibration: A New Approach ([page 263](#))

This handbook describes the method for the assessment of floor vibration in accordance with P354 that has been adopted in Tekla Structural Designer. The method seeks to establish, with reasonable accuracy, the response of the floor to dynamic excitation expected in offices of normal occupancy. This excitation is almost solely based on occupants walking. With appropriate design criteria, the approach is likely to be equally applicable to sectors other than offices.

The existing solution to checking this type of criterion - a simple calculation of the natural frequency of an individual beam - is felt in many cases to be insufficiently accurate. More importantly, such calculations do not consider two important factors,

- the natural frequency is only the 'response side' of the equation. The 'action' side of the equation is also important i.e. the dynamic excitation - this is the activity that might cause an adverse response from the floor. Walking, dancing and machine vibration are all on the 'action' side of the equation and are all very different in their potential effect.
- the natural frequency of an isolated beam is exactly that and takes no account of the influence (good or bad) of the surrounding floor components. In particular, with composite floors, the slabs will force other beams to restrict or sympathize with the beam under consideration.

The culmination of the calculations carried out by Tekla Structural Designer is a "Response Factor". It is important to note that this response factor,

- is not a truly real value of the response of the actual floor since the complex nature of real building layouts are idealized into standard 'cases'.
- is compared with certain limits that have been recommended by industry experts for a limited classification of building type. They are not arbitrary but are not absolute either (cf. calculated deflection and deflection limits)
- is relatively insensitive. That is, a twofold change in the response factor will only just be perceptible to the occupants (cf. logarithmic scale of sound power levels, dbA).
- could be over-conservative particularly for those buildings where tight requirements are imposed.

Notwithstanding the above, this approach is another tool at your disposal that could enable you to spot a problem before the floor is built and prevent the first steps of the client into his new building proving a disaster!

You should find that the check is simple to operate, but it will require you to make choices that may be unfamiliar to you. The purpose of this handbook is to assist you in becoming familiar with the requirements of the check and to assist you in making reasonable judgments regarding the input required.

4.2 Scope of floor vibration (P354)

The reference upon which Tekla Structural Designer's floor vibration check is based is the main limiting factor with regard to scope. This is SCI Publication P354 ([page 263](#)) There are no doubt many other texts that deal with vibration problems in buildings, and indeed there is a British Standard dealing with the evaluation of human exposure to vibration in buildings, BS 6472: 1992 ([page 263](#)) . However this SCI publication has distilled this wider knowledge

into readily usable design guidance that is specifically aimed at floors in multi-storey buildings of normal occupancy.

You are able to define an area on a particular floor level that is to be subject to the vibration response analysis and design. The layout of beams in real multi-storey buildings can be of almost any configuration. **The methodology adopted in P354 is only applicable to regular structures which by and large have to be created from rectilinear grids.** It is your responsibility to make an appropriate selection of the beams etc. that are to be the basic components of the idealized case.

As you proceed through the input making your selections, Tekla Structural Designer will, where it is possible to do so, interrogate the underlying model and retrieve the appropriate data. Once all the data has been assembled, you are then able to perform the check, after which a detailed set of results will be available for review. If you are unhappy with the outcome of your choices you can close the results window and make alternative selections by editing the Floor Vibration Check item properties.

4.3 Limitations and Assumptions of floor vibration to P354

The scope is primarily defined by the reference design document ([page 263](#)) but the following additional limitations and assumptions should be noted.

- The design guidance is based on composite floors acting compositely with the steel beams. It is unclear whether the design approach is directly applicable to non-composite construction.
- For simplicity and to avoid the necessity of Tekla Structural Designer having to identify all the beams in the area selected for vibration assessment, the component of the unit mass from the self-weight of the beams is ignored. This will lead to a slight inaccuracy in the participating mass that is conservative (more mass is advantageous). Note, however, that beam self-weight is included in the calculation of beam deflection but only when the self-weight loadcase is included in the load combination.
- Cantilever beams are excluded from the analysis.
- Cold formed sections are excluded.
- Precast slabs are excluded.

4.4 Design philosophy of P354 floor vibration

General

The Engineer ensures the safety of building occupants by satisfying all design criteria at the Ultimate Limit State. Similarly, the health of building occupants is partly taken care of when deflection limits at the Serviceability Limit State are satisfied (although this Limit State does have other purposes than simply the health of occupants).

However, for floors that are subject to cyclic or sudden loading, it is the human perception of motion that could cause the performance of a floor to be found unsatisfactory. Such perception is usually related to acceleration levels. In most practical building structures, the reaction of the occupants to floor acceleration varies between irritation and a feeling of insecurity. This is based on the instinctive human perception that motion in a 'solid' building indicates inadequacy or imminent failure.

The working environment also affects the perception of motion. For busy environments, where the occupant is surrounded by the activity that is producing the vibrations, the perception of motion is reduced. In contrast, for quieter environments (such as laboratories and residential dwellings), where the source of vibration is unseen, the perception of motion is significantly heightened.

The design philosophy to ensure that the potential for such human response is minimized, has a number of facets,

- the **dynamic excitation** causing the vibration i.e. the disturbing force profile, which is force and time dependent. For the sorts of building and occupancy considered here, this is the act of walking.
- the **required performance**. This depends upon the type of environment. As discussed above this, in turn, depends upon the involvement of the occupant in the generation of the vibration and also on the nature of the occupancy. The latter is important for laboratories carrying out delicate work, or operating theatres, for example.
- the **provided performance**. This is the "Response Factor" and is dependent on the system natural frequency and, more importantly, the participating mass. The latter is driven mainly by the selection of an area of floor that is reasonable and appropriate.

Dynamic excitation

In a classical spring-mass system that includes a (viscous) damper, when a simple force is applied to the mass to extend (or contract) the spring, the mass moves up and down (oscillates). This movement is significant at first but eventually reduces to zero due to the resistance offered by the damper. In a floor system in a building,

- the mass is the self-weight of the floor and any other loading that is present for the majority of the time that the occupants could be exposed to vibration effects,

- the spring is the stiffness of the floor system, which will have a number of different component beams (secondary and primary) and the floor slab,
- the damper is provided by a number of elements that are able to absorb energy from the free vibration of the system. There will be energy absorbed,
 - within connections, since they behave 'better' than the ideal that is assumed
 - from losses due to the unsymmetrical nature of real buildings e.g. grid layout, and dispersion of loads from furnishings and contents
 - from components such as partitions that are out-of-plane of the vibration and interfere with the 'mode'.

The determination of the contribution of each of these components as they affect real floor systems is given in detail in later sections. These describe the 'response' side of the floor system. In order to establish the required performance of the system the 'input' must also be defined i.e. that event, events or continuum that is the 'dynamic excitation'.

In the simple example described at the start of this section the 'input' was simply a force that caused a displacement to the system and was then released. This might be equivalent to a person jumping off a chair onto the floor. However, in the context of the concerns over the vibration of floors, it is not this sort of input that is of interest. The main concern is the excitation of the floor brought about by walking.

Unlike the simple example, walking produces loading that is cyclic. This loading can be idealized into a series of sine curves of load against time. Each curve is an exact multiple of the walking frequency called harmonics. When one of these harmonics of the cyclic loading coincides with the natural frequency of the floor system then resonance is set up. The consequence of resonance that is detected, and may disturb occupants, is the associated peak acceleration. For the first harmonic, the peak acceleration is dependent upon the applied force (the weight of one standard person multiplied by a factor, α_n), the mass of the system (the self-weight of the floor plate plus other loading that could be considered as permanent), and the amount of damping in the system (the damping ratio, ζ). The factor, α_n , is known as a Fourier coefficient and links the magnitude of the applied force in any harmonic of the walking function to the weight of one standard person. It has been established experimentally for different activities and different activity frequencies.

Hence, the dynamic excitation of a floor is dependent upon the forcing function due to walking and its relationship to the natural frequency of the floor system. It is the level of the peak acceleration that this generates that is particularly important in determining the performance of the floor.

Required performance

The required performance of a floor system is very dependent upon the potential response of humans. Human response is a very complex subject since there is no such thing as a 'standard human'. The perception of vibration will differ from person to person, their body mass varies significantly and the body's reaction will depend upon age, gender etc. The human response has been studied and the accepted wisdom is embodied in BS 6472: 1992, Guide to evaluation of human exposure to vibration in buildings (1 Hz to 80 Hz) (page 263)

It may be remembered that it is the acceleration of the floor system that the human perceives. BS 6472: 1992 provides a series of curves one of which is the 'base' limit of (vertical) acceleration against frequency (of the floor). Within the practical range of frequencies dealt with, a single value of the 'base' limit on acceleration is given as 0.005 m/s^2 . This single value holds

- down to 3 Hz but no floor should be allowed to have a system natural frequency below this value anyway
- up to 10 Hz. Such a large value would be unusual but beyond that point there is a simple linear relationship between the base limit of acceleration and the natural frequency within an extended but just practical range.

The accelerations acceptable for different use of buildings are described using the 'base' limits. Multiplying factors are used to increase the base acceleration limit according to the intended use of the building. The multiplying factors are referred to as 'response factors' in the SCI guidance. Thus the target acceleration of the floor under consideration is the root mean square acceleration multiplied by the response factor. This design condition is turned on its head to give a 'provided response factor' that is then compared with the 'required response factor'. The required response factor is the measure of the "Required performance" and is given in the SCI guidance as,

- $R = 8$ for a workshop
- $R = 8$ for a general office
- $R = 2$ for a residential building during day time use

You should choose a required response factor based on both engineering judgement and the advice given in P354. In particular it may be noted that, "changing R by a factor of 2 is equivalent only to the most marginal change to human perception".

Provided performance

It is in establishing the provided performance that most of the design calculations are required. The object of these calculations is to determine the 'required response factor'.

The start point is the calculation of the natural frequency of the floor system. This is established from the individual component frequencies for each of two

possible shape modes, namely the Secondary Beam Mode and the Primary Beam Mode. The natural frequencies of the individual components can be adjusted to allow for boundary conditions e.g. two spans continuous. The fundamental frequency, f_0 , is the lower value for the two modes considered. A minimum natural frequency is given in SCI P354 of 3.0 Hz.

Next the 'modal mass' is required. This is dependent upon the physical size of the floor plate selected and an effective width and/or length that is itself dependent on the natural frequency of the floor. The modal mass has by far the largest influence on the response factor provided.

The 'Resonance Build-up Factor' makes allowance for the time it takes for someone walking across the floor to begin to excite the floor - vibration is not instantaneous upon the first footfall. This has an upper limit of 1.0 and can be taken conservatively as 1.0. The calculation requires the 'damping ratio' - this is a user input.

The resonance build-up factor, the damping ratio, the modal mass, and the weight of a 'standard person' along with an appropriate Fourier coefficient are used to calculate the peak acceleration.

The final determination of the response factor provided requires the 'root mean square' acceleration. The rms acceleration has two formulations depending upon the fundamental, system frequency. The response factor is a very simple calculation.

The design condition is simply,

$$R_{\text{prov}} \leq R_{\text{reqd}}$$

4.5 Provided performance P354 floor vibration

System frequency

Deflections

For the primary beam, the base maximum simply supported deflection, δ_{PBSS} , is derived from the analysis model with no allowance for boundary conditions.

For the secondary beam, the base maximum simply supported deflection, δ_{SBSS} , is derived from the analysis model and the maximum deflection for a fixed end condition, δ_{SBFE} , is calculated from,

$$\delta_{\text{SBFE}} = m \cdot b \cdot L_{\text{SB}}^4 / (384 \cdot E_s \cdot I_{\text{SB}}) + m \cdot b \cdot L_{\text{SB}}^2 / (24 \cdot G \cdot A_y)$$

Where

m = unit mass in kN/mm²

b = secondary beam spacing in mm

L_{SB}	=	span of the secondary beam in mm
I_{SB}	=	the inertia of the secondary beam in mm ⁴
E_S	=	the steel modulus in kN/mm ²
G	=	the steel shear modulus in kN/mm ²
A_y	=	the major axis shear area in mm ²

For the slab, the base maximum deflection for a fixed end condition, δ_{SlabFE} , is calculated from,

$$\delta_{SlabFE} = m * L_{Slab}^4 / (384 * E_C * I_{Slab})$$

Where

m	=	unit mass in kN/mm ²
L_{Slab}	=	span of the slab in mm
I_{Slab}	=	the inertia of the slab in mm ⁴ /mm
E_C	=	the dynamic concrete slab modulus in kN/mm ²
	=	$E_S * 1.1 / \alpha_{short}$

These base, maximum simply supported deflections for both primary and secondary beams, δ_{**SS} , derived from the analysis model, can be adjusted to cater for boundary conditions for 'two-span continuous' or 'three-span continuous' cases to give δ_{barSS} .

For 'two span continuous' the adjusted deflection is taken from P354 as,

$$\delta_{barSS} = \text{MIN}[(0.4 + k_M / k_S * (1 + 0.6 * L_S^2 / L_M^2)) / (1 + k_M / k_S), 1.0] * \delta_{**SS}$$

Where

k_M	=	the 'stiffness' of the critical span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)
	=	I_M / L_M
k_S	=	the stiffness of the adjoining span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)
	=	I_S / L_S
L_M	=	the span of the critical span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)
L_S	=	the span of the adjoining span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)
I_M	=	the inertia of the critical span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)

I_S = the inertia of the adjoining span selected by the user
(primary or secondary beam as appropriate)

For 'three span continuous' the adjusted deflection is taken from P354 as,

$$\delta_{\text{barSS}} = \text{MIN}[(0.6 + 2 * k_M / k_S * (1 + 1.2 * L_S^2 / L_M^2)) / (3 + 2 * k_M / k_S), 1.0] * \delta_{\text{SS}}$$

Where

k_M = the 'stiffness' of the critical (middle) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)

$$= I_M / L_M$$

k_S = the stiffness of the adjoining (outer) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beams as appropriate)

$$= I_S / L_S$$

L_M = the span of the critical (middle) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)

L_S = the span of the adjoining (outer) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beams as appropriate)

I_M = the inertia of the critical (middle) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beam as appropriate)

I_S = the inertia of the adjoining (outer) span selected by the user (primary or secondary beams as appropriate)

Secondary Beam Mode

In this mode the primary beams form nodal lines (zero deflection) about which the secondary beams vibrate. The slab is assumed to be continuous over the secondary beams so a fixed end condition is used.

$$\delta_{\text{SBmode}} = \delta_{\text{barSBSS}} + \delta_{\text{SlabFE}}$$

and

$$f_{\text{SBmode}} = 18 / \sqrt{\delta_{\text{SBmode}}}$$

Primary Beam Mode

In this mode the primary beams vibrate about the columns as simply supported beams whilst the secondary beams and slabs are taken to be fixed ended

$$\delta_{\text{PBmode}} = \delta_{\text{barPBSS}} + \delta_{\text{SBFE}} + \delta_{\text{SlabFE}}$$

and

$$f_{PBmode} = 18 / \sqrt{\delta_{PBmode}}$$

System Frequency

The natural frequency of the system, f_0 , is calculated from,

$$f_0 = \text{MIN}\{ f_{SBmode}, f_{PBmode} \}$$

Limitations

The absolute minimum natural frequency of the floor system is limited to 3.0 Hz. Where the floor system frequency is below these limits the design fails.

Similarly, no single element within the floor structure should have a fundamental frequency less than 3.0 Hz. Three additional checks are therefore carried out and their results only published if there is a Fail. These checks are,

f_{PBSS}	=	$18 / \sqrt{\delta_{PBSS}}$	must be ≥ 3 else the design Fails
f_{SBSS}	=	$18 / \sqrt{\delta_{SBSS}}$	must be ≥ 3 else the design Fails
f_{SlabFE}	=	$18 / \sqrt{\delta_{SlabFE}}$	must be ≥ 3 else the design Fails

Modal mass

The 'modal mass' is the effective mass participating in the vibration of the floor. In accordance with SCI P354, it is taken as the 'unit mass' multiplied by the effective plan area of the floor participating in the motion as given by,

$$M = m * L_{eff} * S$$

Where

m	=	the unit mass in kg/m ²
L_{eff}	=	the effective floor length
S	=	the effective floor width

Where

$$L_{eff} = 0.9 * (1.10)^{n_y - 1} * (E * I_{SB} / (m * b * f_0^2))^{0.25} \text{ but } \leq n_y * L_y$$

Where

n_y	=	number of bays (≤ 4) in the direction of the secondary beam span
EI_{SB}	=	dynamic flexural rigidity of the composite secondary beam (in Nm^2 when m is in kg/m^2)
b	=	floor beam spacing (in m)
f_0	=	system, natural frequency from above
L_y	=	span of the secondary beam (in m)
and		
S	=	$\eta*(1.15)^{n_x-1}*(E*I_{Slab}/(m*f_0^2))0.25$ but $\leq n_x*L_x$

Where

n_x	=	number of bays (≤ 4) in the direction of the primary beam span
EI_{Slab}	=	dynamic flexural rigidity of the slab (in Nm^2 when m is in kg/m^2) system,
f_0	=	natural frequency from above
L_x	=	span of the primary beam (in m)

Where

η	=	frequency factor	
	=	0.5	for $f_0 < 5$ Hz
	=	$21*f_0 - 0.55$	for $5 \text{ Hz} \leq f_0 \leq 6 \text{ Hz}$
	=	0.71	for $f_0 > 6 \text{ Hz}$

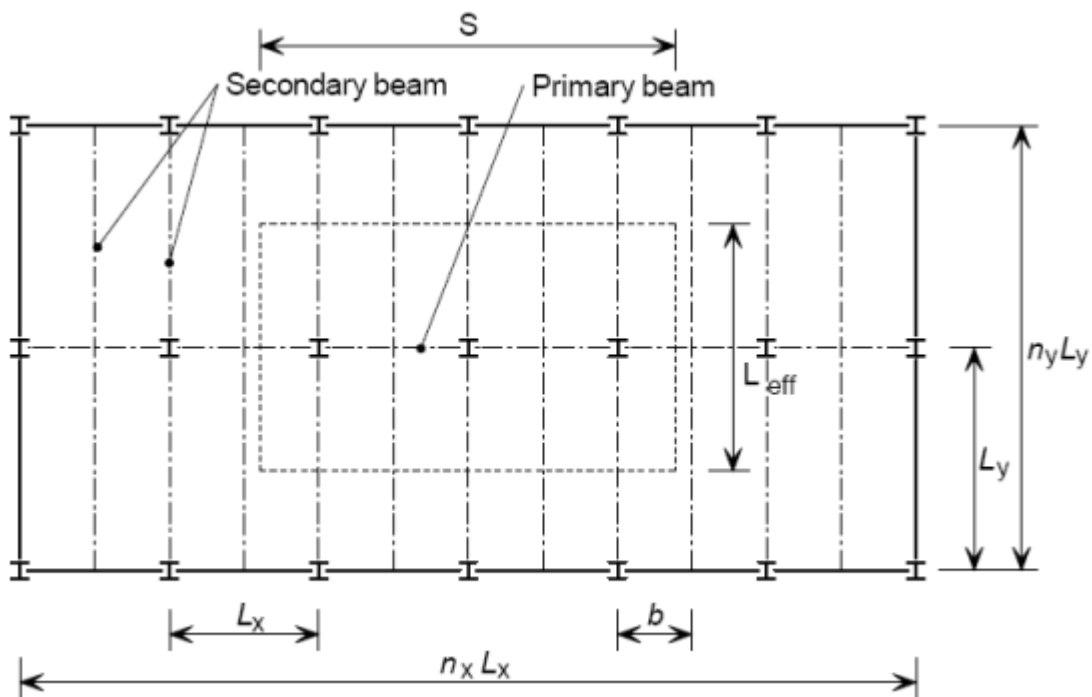


Figure 1: Definition of variables used to establish effective modal mass

Mode Shape Factor

As previously described, there are two main mode shapes which relate to the lowest frequencies - a secondary beam mode and a primary beam mode. The lowest frequency of the two modes is used and the mode shape factors is determined using the same mode.

There are two mode shape factors, μ_e at the point of excitation and μ_r at the point of response.

If the response and excitation points are unknown, or if a general response for the whole floor is required, μ_e and μ_r can conservatively be taken as 1.

Tekla Structural Designer will not calculate the values of these mode shape factors, and will default to 1.0 but also gives you the option of providing values to be used.

Resonance Build-up Factor

The 'resonance build-up factor' makes an allowance for the time it takes for someone walking across the floor to begin to excite the floor - vibration is not instantaneous upon the first footfall. Hence, a 'walking time' is required and is

calculated from the 'walking distance' (see:Maximum corridor length) divided by the 'walking velocity'.

First it is necessary to calculate the walking velocity as given by Equation 16 of SCI P354,

$$V = 67 \cdot f_p^2 - 4.83 \cdot f_p + 4.5$$

for f_p in the range 1.7 to 2.4 Hz

Where

f_p = the pace (walking) frequency
supplied by the user

The resonance build-up factor is taken from Equation 37 of SCI P354,

$$\rho = 1 - e^{(-2 \cdot \pi \cdot \zeta \cdot L_p \cdot f_p / V)}$$

Where

ζ = the damping ratio
 L_p = the walking distance
 V = the walking velocity given above

Note that the resonance build-up factor has an upper bound of 1.0 and may, conservatively be set to 1.0.

Resonance Acceleration

Low Frequency Floors

For system frequencies between 3 Hz and 10 Hz, the root mean square (rms) acceleration is calculated from,

$$a_{w,rms} = a_{w,rms}$$

Where

μ_e & μ_r = mode shape factors
 Q = the person's weight taken as 745.6 N (76 kg)
 M = the modal mass (kg)
= the damping ratio
 ρ = the resonance build-up factor
 W = the appropriate code-defined weighting factor
for the human perception of vibrations, based
on the fundamental frequency, f_0
= $f_0 / 5$ for $2 \leq f_0 < 5$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 1.0 && \text{for } 5 \leq f_0 \leq 16 \\
 &= 16/f_0 && \text{for } f_0 > 16
 \end{aligned}$$

High Frequency Floors

For system frequencies greater than 10 Hz, the root mean square (rms) acceleration is calculated from the following expression, which assumes that the floor exhibits a transient response,

$$a_{w,rms} = 2 * \pi * \mu_e * \mu_r * 185 * Q * W / (M * f_0^{0.3} * 700 * \sqrt{2})$$

Response Factor

The 'base curves' in BS 6472: 1992 are given in terms of root mean square (rms) acceleration

The provided response factor is then calculated from,

$$R_{prov} = a_{w,rms} / 0.005$$

The 'required response factor', R_{reqd} , is a user input and leads to the final design condition,

$$R_{prov} \leq R_{reqd}$$

In SCI P354 the recommended Response Factors derive from BS 6472: 1992, where they are called 'Multiplying Factors' and are reproduced in SCI P354 as Tables 5.2 and 5.3.

Vibration Dose Values

When the floor has a higher than acceptable response factor, the acceptability of the floor may be assessed by considering the intermittent nature of the dynamic forces. This is accomplished by carrying out a Vibration Dose Value [VDV] analysis.

This method calculates the number of times an activity (for example walking along a corridor) will take place during an exposure period, n_a , from,

$$n_a = (1/T_a) * (VDV / (0.68 * a_{w,rms}))^4$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 T_a &= \text{the duration of the activity} \\
 &= L_p / V \text{ if } L_p \text{ is known OR} \\
 &= \text{value supplied by user if } L_p \text{ is not known} \\
 VDV &= \text{VDV value supplied by user, (default 0.4).}
 \end{aligned}$$

Typical VDV values are shown below:

Vibration dose limits ($\text{m/s}^{1.75}$) for z-axis vibration specified by BS 6472			
Place	Low probability of adverse comment	Adverse comment possible	Adverse comment probable
buildings 16 h day	0.2 to 0.4	0.4 to 0.8	0.8 to 1.6
buildings 8 h night	0.13	0.26	0.51

4.6 Input requirements for P354 floor vibration

General

The simplified method for the analysis of the vibration of floors given in the SCI Publication P354, on which the Tekla Structural Designer check is based, is only applicable to regular structures which, by and large, are created from rectilinear grids.

Of course the floor layouts of 'real' multi-storey buildings are rarely uniform and Tekla Structural Designer therefore provides you with the opportunity to select the more irregular floor areas to be assessed with grids that are other than rectilinear.

In so far as the selection of the beams to be used in the analysis is concerned, only beams with Non-Composite or Composite attributes are valid for selection and, within these confines, you are able to:

- select a single beam
- select a beam span as critical plus an adjoining span (in a two or three span configuration)

In all cases, and subject to the above restrictions, which beams from the selected area of floor are chosen is entirely at your discretion and under your judgment, but it is expected that the beams chosen will be those that are typical, common or the worst case. Irrespective, Tekla Structural Designer will take these beams as those that form the idealized floor layout. There is no validation on what the you select (although there is some validation on which beams are selectable i.e. beams which have no slab for part of their length, beams from angle sections, beams with no adjoining span when a 2-span configuration is chosen, and beams with no adjoining span at both ends when a 3-span configuration is chosen will not be selectable).

Data Derived from Tekla Structural Designer (P354)

Note that, where appropriate, the derived data is for each design combination under SLS loads only.

Unit mass

The unit mass in kg/m^2 is used to establish the 'participating mass' of the floor - that is the mass of floor and its permanent loading that has to be set in motion during vibration of the floor. It is taken as the slab self-weight (and to be accurate, the beam self-weight), other permanent 'Dead' loads and the proportion of the 'Imposed' loads that can be considered as permanent. The latter is usually taken as 10% and, whilst this is the default, the value is editable since imposed storage loads, for example, would warrant a higher value.

The unit mass is obtained by summing all the loads (or the appropriate percentage in the case of imposed loads) that act over or in the selected area. This includes any blanket, area, line and spot loads that are present within the selected area. The component of any of these load types that lie outside of the selected area are ignored. Nodal loads directly on columns are also ignored. The total load is then divided by the area selected.

The slab self-weight will usually be in the Slab Dry loadcase - note that in the case of composite slabs this includes the weight of decking. The beam self-weight is in a separate protected loadcase. For simplicity this component of the unit mass is ignored. This leads to a slight inaccuracy in the participating mass that is conservative (more mass is advantageous).

Note that the use of imposed load reductions has no effect on the floor vibration check.

Slab data

If there are more than one set of slab attributes in the selected area then you have to choose which of these it is appropriate to use. From the designated slab attributes the following information/data is obtained,

- the un-transformed inertia in cm^4 per metre width. For profiled decking this takes account of the concrete in the troughs and is independent of the direction of span of the decking.
- the short-term modular ratio for normal or lightweight concrete as appropriate.

If the designated slab attributes are for a 'generic' slab, then you are asked for the inertia and the dynamic modular ratio.

Secondary beam data

When these are non-composite beams, the inertia is obtained from the sections database. When these beams are of composite construction the inertia is the gross, uncracked composite inertia based on the dynamic modular ratio that is required. Steel joist inertias from the database are assumed to be 'gross' inertias of the chords and are editable. Following guidance contained in AISC Steel Design Guide 11 ([page 263](#)), section 3.6, the

gross steel joist inertia is factored by quantity C_r and displayed as the 'effective' inertia in the results viewer.

The span of the critical/base beam and the adjoining beams is required.

The deflection of the critical beam under the permanent loads is required. To calculate this value, the deflection under the Dead loads and the appropriate percentage of the Imposed load deflection is summed.

Primary beam data

The same data is required as that for the secondary beams.

Floor plate data

The dimensions of the floor plate in the idealized cases are defined in one direction by the number of secondary beam bays and in the orthogonal direction by the number of primary beam bays. In practice, given that the idealized case may not attain, the floorplate dimensions are derived from the slab items you select as participating in the mass.

User Input Data (P354)

Secondary Beam Spacing

You must confirm the spacing of the secondary beams - an average value when the spacing is non-uniform.

Proportion of Imposed Loads

You are required to specify the proportion of the imposed loads that is to be used in the vibration analysis.

Number of bays used to establish Modal mass

You are required to specify the number of bays in the direction of the secondary beam span, n_y , and the number of bays in the direction of the primary beam span, n_x , that are to be used to establish the modal mass. The number of bays ranges from 1 to 4 for both directions.

Mode Shape Factors

You are required to specify the mode shape factors, μ_e and μ_r , which are to be used in the evaluation of the root mean square response acceleration. The default value is 1.0 for both variables.

Damping ratio

Floors do not vibrate as a free mass but have some damping i.e. dissipation of the energy in the system. Four values of damping ratio are recommended in P354 as a percentage,

- 0.5%, for fully welded steel structures, e.g. staircases,
- 1.1%, for completely bare floors or floors where only a small amount of furnishings are present,

- 3.0%, for normal, open-plan, well-furnished floors (the default),
- 4.5%, for a floor where the designer is confident that partitions will be appropriately located to interrupt the relevant mode(s) of vibration i.e. the partition lines are perpendicular to the main vibrating elements of the critical mode shape.

Since an even higher damping ratio might be justified for storage floors for example, a range of up to 10% is offered.

Maximum corridor length

This is used in the calculation of the "Resonance Build-up Factor" that makes an allowance for the time it takes for someone walking across the floor to begin to excite the floor - vibration is not instantaneous upon the first footfall. Hence, a "walking time" is required and is calculated from the "walking distance" (maximum corridor length) divided by the "walking velocity".

The designer will often not know, reliably, the maximum corridor length. The default is therefore taken as the longer of the floor plate dimensions.

If the designer does not wish to estimate the maximum corridor length or accept the default, then the Resonance Build-up Factor can be set to 1.0 by selecting Not known for the maximum corridor length. This sets the Resonance Build-up Factor to 1.0.

Walking Pace

The walking frequency (pace) must be selected in the range 1.7 to 2.4 Hz. This range is equivalent to a walking velocity of 2.5 to 5.7 mph (4.0 to 9.1 kph). Walking velocities less than and greater than this are achievable - slow walking 1.0 to 1.5 mph (1.6 to 2.4 kph) or running 6.0 to 12.0 mph (9.6 to 19.2 kph). However, the range of validity of the formula for calculating the walking velocity is given as that quoted. Thus any consequent value outside of the range 1.7 to 2.4 Hz is given a Warning that this is outside of the range given in Equation 16 of SCI P354. The default value is 1.8 Hz.

Resonance build-up factor

This is calculated data and has an upper bound of 1.0. However, you are able to specify that the calculations should use 1.0 perhaps because there is insufficient information at the time to make a more accurate and reliable estimate (see: **Maximum corridor length** above). Setting the value to 1.0 is conservative.

Required Response Factor

You must enter the response factor that you expect the floor to achieve. This will be based on your engineering judgment and the advice given in P354. Tables 5.2 and 5.3 of that publication give a range of values with the common values being 2, 4, and 8.

Vibration Dose Value (VDV)

You have to specify the VDV value to be used if this analysis is performed (see: [Vibration Dose Values \(page 251\)](#)).

4.7 Vibration of floors to SCI P354 references

1. **British Standards Institution.** BS 6472: 1992 Guide to the evaluation of human response to vibration in buildings (1 Hz to 80 Hz). **BSI 1992.**
2. **The Steel Construction Institute.** Design of Floors for Vibration: A New Approach. **SCI P354. 2007**
3. **AISC Steel Design Guide Series.** 11: Floor Vibrations Due to Human Activity. **AISC 2003 re-print.**

Index

..... 76,79,84,100

Application of NCCI PN002 to Partial Shear Connection (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	95
Classification (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)...	115
Combined buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	83
Concrete beam design to EC2.....	141
Concrete slab (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	98
Cover to Reinforcement (Concrete column: EC2)	174
Cracking of concrete (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	109
Deflection checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	108
Design for Combined Axial and Bending (concrete column :EC2)	189
Design for Combined Axial and Bending (Concrete wall:EC2)	211
Design for Shear (concrete column :EC2)	190
Design method (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	92
Design Parameters for Longitudinal Bars (Concrete column: EC2)	175
Design philosophy of P354 floor vibration	247
Effective Depth of Section (Concrete beam: EC2)	149
General parameters (EC2)	139
Introduction to floor vibration (P354).....	245
Member strength checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	102
Overview (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	93
Precast concrete planks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode).....	99
References EC2	244
Scope of floor vibration (P354).....	246

Shear Capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	77
Side Reinforcement (Concrete beam: EC2)	149
Slender beams (Concrete beam: EC2)	142
Steel beam design to EC3.....	74
Steel beam limitations and assumptions (Beam: EC3 Eurocode).....	75
Steel design to EC3 and EC4	71
Steel single, double angle and tee section design to EC3.....	130
Ultimate Limit State - Strength (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	76

A

Additional reinforcement for torsion (concrete beam: EC2)	168
Additional Tension Reinforcement (Concrete beam: EC2)	164
Axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode) .	116

B

Basic principles (EC3)	71
------------------------------	----

C

Check for sliding (pad and strip base:EC2)....	229
Check for uplift (pad and strip base:EC2).	230
Checks for limiting parameters (pile cap:EC2).....	233
Checks performed (pad and strip base:EC2)	224
Codes of Practice.....	24
Column base plate design to EC3.....	123
Column Stack Classification (Concrete column: EC2)	182
Combination classes (Eurocode).....	68

Combination generator (Eurocode).....	62
Combinations (Eurocode).....	59
Combined bending and axial capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	79
Combined bending and axial capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	118
Combined buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode).....	122
Composite beam design to EC4.....	92
Composite stage design (Composite beam: EC4 Eurocode)	101
Compression buckling (Beams: EC3)	80
Compression buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	119
Concrete column design to EC2.....	173
Concrete design to EC2 (Eurocode)	139
Concrete haunch width(Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	96
Concrete slab design to EC2.....	216
Concrete wall design to EC2.....	194
Construction stage design (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	99
Convention for member axes (EC3 Eurocode)	73
Cover to Reinforcement (Concrete beam: EC2)	143
Cover to Reinforcement (Concrete wall: EC2)	195

D

Definitions (EC3 Eurocode)	72
Deflection check (concrete beam and slab: EC2)	170
Deflection checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	101
Deflection checks (EC3 Eurocode)	73
Design codes.....	24
Design Codes and References.....	24
Design for bending (pad and strip base:EC2)	228
Design for bending (pile cap:EC2).....	232
Design for Bending for Rectangular Sections (concrete beam: EC2)	150
Design for Bending for Rectangular Sections (concrete slab: EC2)	221
Design for Shear (Concrete wall: EC2)	212

Design for shear (pad and strip base:EC2)....	228
Design for shear (pile cap:EC2).....	232
Design method (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	74
Design method (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115
Design Moment Calculations (Concrete column:EC2).....	187
Design Moment Calculations (Concrete wall:EC2).....	208
Design Parameters for Horizontal Bars (Concrete wall EC2)	198
Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete beam: EC2)	144
Design parameters for longitudinal bars (concrete slab: EC2)	216
Design Parameters for Vertical Bars (Concrete wall: EC2)	195
Design Shear Resistance (Concrete beam: EC2)	155
Design values of shear resistance and torsional resistance moment (concrete beam: EC2)	164

E

EC2 Punching shear checks.....	234
Effective Length Calculations (Concrete column:EC2)	179
Effective Length Calculations (Concrete wall:EC2)	201
Equivalent horizontal forces (EHF) (Eurocode)	60
Equivalent steel section - Ultimate limit state (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	102

F

Fire resistance check (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	87
Flanged Design for Bending for Flanged Sections (Concrete beam: EC2)	153
Foundation Bearing Capacity (pad and strip base:EC2).....	224

I

Imposed and roof imposed loads (Eurocode).....	19
Imposed load reduction (Eurocode).....	19
Input Requirements P354 floor vibration	259

L

Lateral torsional buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	82
Lateral torsional buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	121
Lateral torsional buckling checks (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	106
Limitations (concrete beam and slab: EC2)	142
Limitations (Concrete column: EC2)	174
Limitations (Concrete wall: EC2)	195
Limitations and Assumptions of floor vibration to P354.....	247
Loadcase types (Eurocodes).....	17
Loadcases (Eurocode)	17
Loading (Eurocode).....	9

M

Manually defined combinations (Eurocode)	59
Member strength checks (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	100
Minimum Area of Shear Reinforcement (Concrete beam: EC2)	159,160
Minimum area of transverse reinforcement (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	104
Minimum lateral loads (MLL)(Eurocode) ...	60
Moment capacity (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	79
Moment capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	117

N

Nationally Determined Parameters(Eurocode)	9
--	---

Natural frequency checks (SLS) (Beams: EC4 Eurocode)	109
--	-----

O

Overview of Second Order Effects (Concrete wall: EC2)	206
Overview of Second Order Effects (Concrete column: EC2)	184

P

Pad and strip base design to EC2.....	223
Pile axial capacity (pile cap:EC2).....	231
Pile cap design to EC2.....	230
Pile lateral capacity (pile cap:EC2).....	231
Profiled metal decking (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	94
Provided performance P354 floor vibration	251

R

References to EC3 and EC4.....	137
--------------------------------	-----

S

Section classification (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	99
Section classification (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	102
Section properties - serviceability limit state (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	107
Self weight (Eurocode).....	18
Serviceability limit state (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	123
Shear between Flanges and Web of Flanged Beams (Concrete beam: EC2)	161
Shear capacity (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	116
Shear connectors (ULS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	104
Simple columns (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)....	115
Snow loadcases	21
Snow wizard	52

Steel brace design to EC3.....	129
Steel column design to EC3.....	114
Stress checks (SLS) (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	108
Stud connector strength (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	95

T

Torsion (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	86
-------------------------------------	----

U

Ultimate Axial Load Limit (column and wall:EC2)	178
Ultimate Axial Load Limit (Concrete wall:EC2)	200
Ultimate limit state - Buckling (Beams: EC3 Eurocode).....	80
Ultimate limit state buckling (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	118
Ultimate limit state strength (Columns: EC3 Eurocode)	115

V

Vibration of floors to SCI P354 handbook	245
Vibration of floors to SCI P354 references	263

W

Wall Panel Classification(column and wall: EC2)	203
Web openings (Beams: EC3 Eurocode)	88
Web Openings (Composite beams: EC4 Eurocode)	109
Wind loads (Eurocode)	20
Wind modeling.....	70
Wind wizard.....	23,24,25,28,35,46,49
Wind zones.....	42

